

CLASSICAL LATIN
CREATIVELY TAUGHT

LATIN *for* children

Classical or Ecclesiastical Pronunciation



PRIMER C

Dr. Aaron Larsen
Dr. Christopher Perrin

“Classical Latin Creatively Taught”

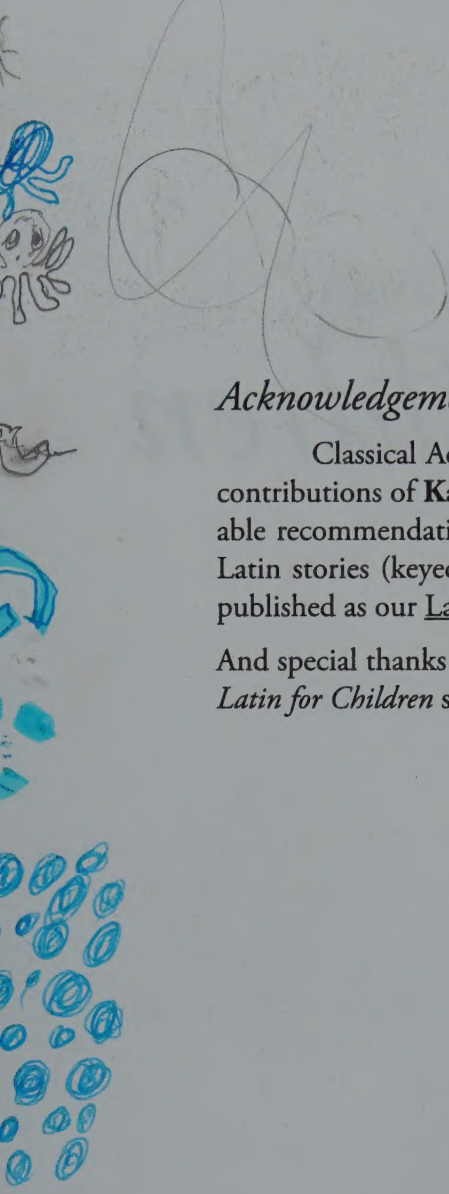
Latin for Children

Primer C

Latin Stories
keyed to the Veritas
history cards are
available in our
companion Latin C
History Reader authored
by **Karen Moore & Erin
Davis.**

Dr. Aaron Larsen
Dr. Christopher Perrin





Acknowledgements

Classical Academic Press would like to thank the talented and generous contributions of **Karen Moore** who has proofed this text and made several valuable recommendations for improving it. She and **Erin Davis** have also created Latin stories (keyed to the Veritas history curriculum) to accompany this text, published as our Latin for Children, Primer C Reader.

And special thanks to **Gary Varney** for his expertise and thorough editing of the *Latin for Children* series.

Latin for Children: Primer C

© 2005, Classical Academic Press

Version 3.2

All rights reserved. This publication may not be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Classical Academic Press.

Classical Academic Press

3920 Market Street

Camp Hill, PA 17011

www.ClassicalAcademicPress.com

ISBN-13: 978-1-60051-012-0

Book design and cover by:

Rob Baddorf

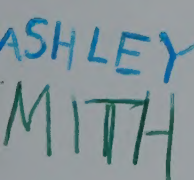


Table of Contents

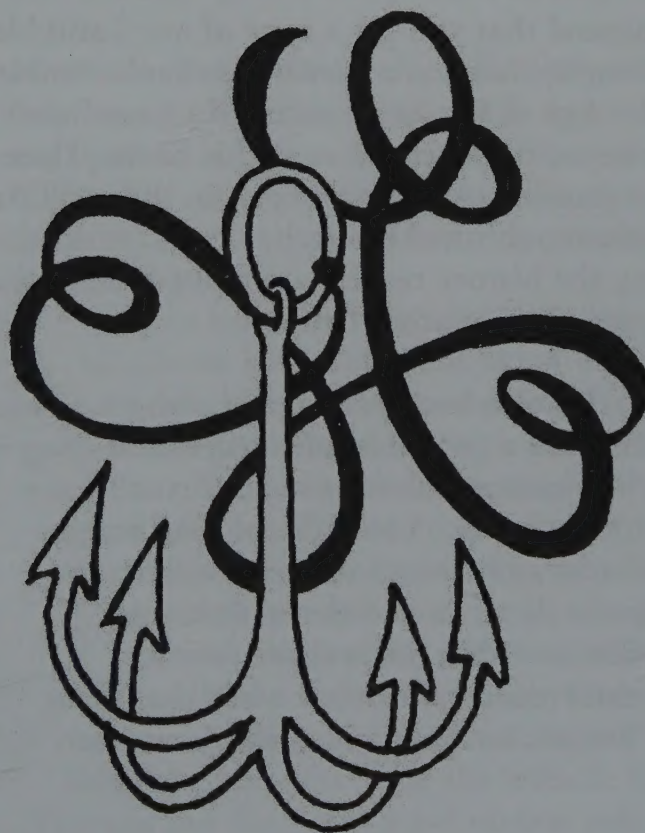
Unit	Chapter (& week)	Page #	Chant	Grammar Topics
Unit I: Nouns and Adjectives of the 1 st , 2 nd , and 3 rd Declensions	1	1	1 st and 2 nd Declension Nouns <i>ō, s, t, mus, tis, nt</i>	Nouns and Adjectives: 1 st and 2 nd Declension Review Verbs: Basic Review
	2	11	3 rd Declension Nouns	Nouns: 3 rd Declension Dative Case
	3	20	<i>brevis, breve...</i>	3 rd Declension Adjectives: 2-Termination Adjectives
	4	28	<i>celer, celeris, celere...</i>	3 rd Declension Adjectives: 3-Termination Adjectives
	5	36	<i>audāx...</i>	3 rd Declension Adjectives: 1-Termination Adjectives
	6	44	Unit Review	
Unit II: Verbs: The Present, Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses	7	51	<i>-bam, bās, bat... & -bō, -bis, -bit...</i>	Verbs: Present System Tense Review
	8	60	<i>-ī, -istī, -it...</i>	Verbs: Perfect Tense Endings
	9	68	<i>-eram, -erās, -erat...</i>	Verbs: Pluperfect Tense Endings
	10	76	<i>-erō, -eris, -erit...</i>	Verbs: Future Perfect Endings
	11	84	Unit Review	

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unit	Chapter (& week)	Page #	Chant	Grammar Topics
Unit III: 4 th and 3 rd iō Conjugations	12	91	<i>audiō...</i>	Verbs: Introduction of the 4 th Conjugation
	13	98	<i>amō, videō, dūcō, audiō</i>	Verbs: Review of 1 st - 4 th Conjugations; Spotting a 4 th Conjugation Verb
	14	105	<i>-am, -ēs, -et...</i>	Verbs: 3 rd and 4 th Conjugation Future
	15	116	<i>capīō, capere</i>	Verbs: 3 rd iō Verbs
	16	125	Unit Review	
Unit IV: Imperatives, Infinitives and Interrogatives	17	131	<i>possum, potes, potest...</i>	<i>possum</i> + Infinitives; Interrogative sentences
	18	141	<i>Re, Te, Ne Chant</i>	Imperatives Review Irregular Imperatives
	19	150	Unit Review	
Unit V: 4 th and 5 th Declensions Nouns	20	155	<i>-us, -ūs, -uī...</i>	Nouns: 4 th Declension
	21	164	<i>-ū, -ūs, -uī...</i>	Nouns: 4 th Declension Neuter Nouns
	22	171	<i>-ēs, -eī, -eī...</i>	Nouns: 5 th Declension
	23	177	Unit Review	
Unit VI: Pronoun Review	24	182	<i>ego & tū</i>	Personal Pronouns: (1 st and 2 nd person, singular and plural)
	25	191	<i>is, ea, id... eī, eae, ea...</i>	Personal Pronouns: (3 rd per- son, singular and plural)
	26	197	<i>hic, haec, hoc...</i>	Demonstrative Pronouns
	27	204	<i>ille, illa, illud... & iste, ista, istud...</i>	Demonstrative Pronouns
	28	211	Unit Review	

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unit	Chapter (& week)	Page #	Chant	Grammar Topics
Unit VII: Correlative Adverbs and Adverbs of Time	29	218	<i>hīc, illīc, istīc ...</i>	Adverb Correlatives
	30	228	<i>ubī, alicubī, ibi...</i>	More Adverb Correlatives Adverbs of Time
	31	237	Unit Review	



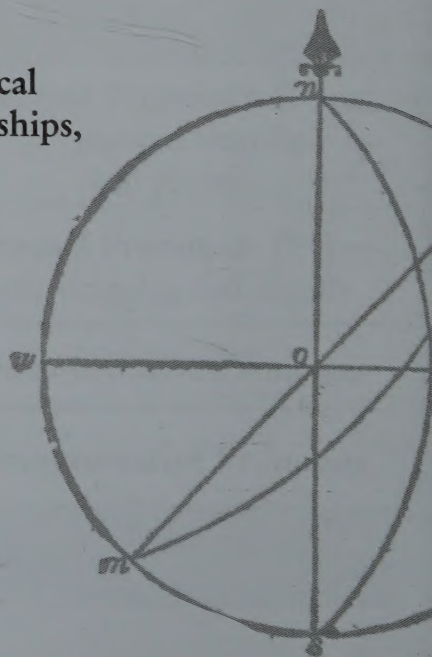
INTRODUCTION TO

Students

Now you are a 3rd year student of Latin—you are quickly becoming a veteran! This year you will continue to round out your study of Latin by learning all the remaining noun declensions (the 4th and 5th declensions) and the last remaining verb conjugation (the 4th conjugation). You will learn some new adjectives and adverbs and will learn three new verb tenses. Along the way you will review words and concepts you have already learned so that your level of mastery grows. Like last year, you will learn another 240 Latin words making for a total of 720 words in three years. You will also be joining the voyage and adventures of a brave sea captain and his sailors whose story will be told in Latin from chapter to chapter.

We also recommend that you get a copy of our Latin history reader (*Libellus dē Historiā*) that accompanies this book. It features 32 history stories (the Age of Explorers and Early American History) in Latin that are keyed to the chapters of this book. These 32 chapters also follow the general sequence of topics in the early American history curriculum published by Veritas Press (which contains 32 cards). By using the history reader you will get more than enough practice reading and translating Latin.

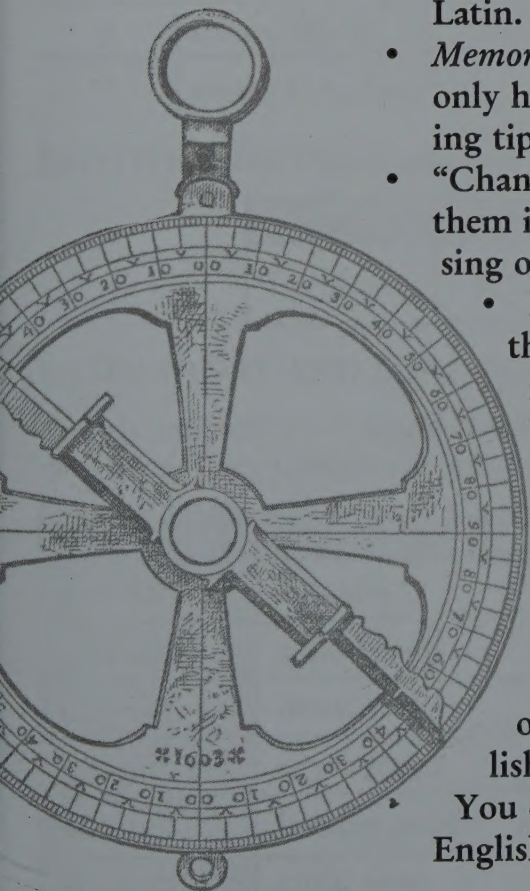
You will notice that this book is designed along a nautical theme. You will find a good deal of pictures featuring ships, anchors, sails, barometers, telescopes and virtually anything to do with seafaring. You will also find images of famous explorers and famous Americans from the history of Colonial America and the early history of the United States. Visit our website (www.ClassicalAcademicPress.com) to view a key that identifies all these images, but try to identify them yourself first.



If you have completed *Primer B*, you will find this book quite familiar since it follows the same format of 6 pages a week with regular review chapters. This text includes 5 stories from *Libellus dē Historiā* (the Latin history reader); there is also a comprehensive reference section with charts of all the verb conjugations and noun declensions you have learned. There is also a large glossary in the back of the book that contains all the words from *Primers A, B and C*—that's 720 words!

As a veteran Latin student you undoubtedly know the tricks of learning Latin well. Here they are again, just as a reminder:

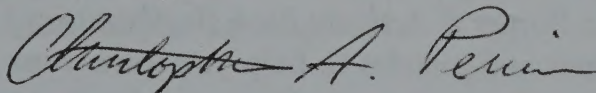
- Do your exercises faithfully and well. Your assignments should not be too long, but you will have at least two every week.
- Try to speak the Latin you are learning, even when it seems awkward.
- Ask questions whenever you are not sure of something.
- Get a copy of the *Primer B Activity Book* (forthcoming) that contains games and puzzles to help you learn your Latin.
- *Memorize your Latin words.* Like last year, you will only have to learn about 10 words a week! The following tips will help you master your Latin words.
- “Chant” or sing your words, just like you will learn them in class. It is much easier to remember what you sing or chant.
 - If you have the video or DVD that comes with this book, sing and chant along with the students in the video. Use the audio CD in the car or at home to chant along with some other students.
 - Review your Latin words every day (or night) for about 5 to 15 minutes. A little bit of review everyday is very, very helpful. Keep reviewing words from earlier chapters to make sure you have really mastered them.
 - Make Latin vocabulary cards and put them on a ring, or get a set of vocabulary cards published for this text (visit the website for details). You can put the Latin word on one side and the English word on the other. Take these cards with you



- wherever you go so you can review almost any time!
- Make up silly, fun ways to remember the word. For example, sing “Come to my *insula*, come to my island,” complete with a little Hawaiian dance. *Insula* is the Latin word for island.
 - Quiz your classmate, or anyone else taking Latin. Quiz your teacher or parent and have them quiz you. Have contests to see who can get the most right or who can give the answers fastest. Make your own written test and see how many you can get right.
 - Try and find new derivatives (English words that come from Latin) for the Latin words you know.

We hope that this 3rd year of study will be satisfying and enjoyable. Please contact us with questions and ideas at our website (www.classicalacademicpress.com).

Pax (Peace),



Christopher A. Perrin, M.Div, Ph.D.
Aaron Larsen, D.A.



CLASSICAL PRONUNCIATION

There are 24 letters in the Latin alphabet—there is no *j* or *w*. The letters *k*, *y* and *z* were used very rarely. Letters in Latin are never silent. There are two systems of pronunciation in Latin—classical and ecclesiastical.

LATIN CONSONANTS: Consonants are pronounced the same as in English with these exceptions.

Letter	Pronunciation	Example	Sound
b	before <i>s</i> or <i>t</i> like English <i>p</i>	urbs: city	<i>urps</i>
c / ch	always hard like English <i>k</i>	cantō: I sing	<i>kahn-toh</i>
g	always hard like English <i>goat</i>	gaudium: joy	<i>gow-diyum</i>
gn	in the middle of the word like English <i>ngn</i> in <i>hangnail</i>	magnus: big	<i>mang-nus</i>
i	before a vowel it is a consonant like the English <i>y</i>	iaceō: I lie down	<i>yah-keh-oh</i>
r	should be rolled as in Spanish or Italian	rēgīna: queen	<i>ray-geen-ah</i>
s	always like the <i>s</i> in the English <i>sing</i>	servus: servant	<i>ser-wus</i>
v	always as an English <i>w</i>	vallum: wall	<i>wa-luhm</i>

DIPHTHONGS: Diphthongs are two vowels with a single sound.

ae	au	ei	oe	ui
as in eye	as in out	as in stray	as in coil	not a diphthong; pronounced oo-ee

LATIN SHORT AND LONG VOWELS

Vowels can be short or long in Latin. When they are long, they have a little dash called a macron placed over them. Long vowels take about twice as long to say as short ones.

SHORT VOWELS			LONG VOWELS		
LETTER	EXAMPLE	SOUND	LETTER	EXAMPLE	SOUND
a in <i>Dinah</i>	casa: house	<i>ka-sa</i>	ā in <i>father</i>	stāre: to stand	<i>stah-reh</i>
e in <i>pet</i>	deus: god	<i>deh-us</i>	ē in <i>they</i>	vidēre: to see	<i>wi-dey-reh</i>
i in <i>pit</i>	silva: forest	<i>sil-wah</i>	ī in <i>machine</i>	īre: to go	<i>ee-reh</i>
o in <i>pot</i>	bonus: good	<i>bah-nus</i>	ō in <i>hose</i>	errō: I wander	<i>e-roh</i>
u in <i>put</i>	cum: with	<i>kum</i>	ū in <i>rude</i>	lūdus: school	<i>loo-duhs</i>

ECCLESIASTICAL PRONUNCIATION

CLASSICAL OR ECCLESIASTICAL PRONUNCIATION?

Both “dialects” are really quite similar, so ultimately the decision is not a significant one. The classical dialect attempts to follow the way the Romans spoke Latin (an older dialect) while the ecclesiastical dialect follows the way Latin pronunciation evolved within the Christian Church during the Middle Ages, particularly within the Roman Catholic Church.

The main difference between the two dialects is the way *c/ch* and *v* are pronounced. The classical dialect pronounces *c/ch* as an English *k*, whereas the ecclesiastical pronounces it (Italian style) as an English *ch* (as in check). The ecclesiastical pronounces *v* as the English *v* (as in victory) whereas the classical pronounces it as an English *w*. In the ecclesiastical dialect a *j* occasionally appears in place of an *i* and the *t* has a special pronunciation, like *ts* as in *cats*. See the chart below with the ecclesiastical pronunciation shaded.

So, take your pick and stick with it! Either choice is a good one. Our audio CDs and DVDs contain both pronunciations.

There is no *w*. The letters *k*, *y* and *z* were used very rarely. Letters in Latin are never silent.

LATIN CONSONANTS: Consonants are pronounced the same as in English with these exceptions.

Letter	Pronunciation	Example	Sound
b	before s or t like English p	urbs: city	<i>urps</i>
c	before e, i, ae, oe and y always like English ch	cēna: food	<i>chey-nah</i>
c	before other letters, hard c like English cap	cantō: I sing	<i>kahn-toh</i>
g	soft before e, i, ae, oe like English germ	magistra: teacher	<i>mah-jee-stra</i>
g	before other letters, hard like English goat	gaudium: joy	<i>gow-diyum</i>
gn	in the middle of the word like English ngn in hangnail	magnus: big	<i>mang-nus</i>
j	like the English y in yes	jaceō: I lie down	<i>yah-keh-oh</i>
r	should be rolled as in Spanish or Italian	rēgīna: queen	<i>ray-geen-ah</i>
s	always like the s in the English sing	servus: servant	<i>ser-vus</i>
t	when followed by i and a vowel, like tsee	silentium: silence	<i>see-len-tsee-um</i>
v	always as an English v	vallum: wall	<i>va-luhm</i>

DIPHTHONGS: Diphthongs are two vowels with a single sound.

ae	au	oe	ui
as in stray	as in out	as in stray	not a diphthong; pronounced oo-ee

LATIN SHORT AND LONG VOWELS

Vowels can be short or long in Latin. When they are long, they have a little dash called a macron placed over them. Long vowels take about twice as long to say as short ones. The ecclesiastical short and long vowels are pronounced in the same way as in the classical pronunciation. See the table on the preceding page.

Chapter 1

Unit 1

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 1st and 2nd Declension Noun endings

	1 st declension		2 nd declension (m)		2 nd declension (n)	
	S	P	S	P	S	P
Nominative	-a	-ae	-us	-ī	-um	-a
Genitive	-ae	-ārum	-ī	-ōrum	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ae	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-am	-ās	-um	-ōs	-um	-a
Ablative	-ā	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs

Present Tense Verb Endings

	Singular	Plural
1 st Person	-ō	-mus
2 nd Person	-s	-tis
3 rd Person	-t	-nt

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN | ENGLISH

VERBS (1ST AND 3RD CONJUGATIONS)

bibō, bibere, bibī	to drink
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum	to care for
convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum	to call together, assemble
festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātum	to hurry, rush, accelerate
portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum	to carry; bring
salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum	to greet, wish well; welcome

NOUNS (1ST AND 2ND DECLENSION)

colōnus, -ī	colonist; farmer
toga, -ae	toga (clothing)

ADJECTIVES

fessus, -a, -um	tired
liber, libera, liberum	free

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
aqua, -ae	water
dominus/ domina	lord, master/ lady, mistress
servus/ serva	slave (male)/ slave (female)
vir, -ī	man
fēmina, -ae	woman
magister, magistri	teacher, master, captain



NOUN REVIEW

Now it's time to refresh your memory once again about nouns and adjectives. Remember that all nouns and adjectives have three characteristics: **gender**, **number** and **case**.

Do you remember the options for gender? They are **masculine**, **feminine** and **neuter**. The options for number (which tells you how many, as you no doubt remember) are **singular** (one) and **plural** (more than one). The options for case, which helps you determine the noun's role in the sentence, are: **nominative**, **genitive**, **dative**, **accusative** and **ablative**.

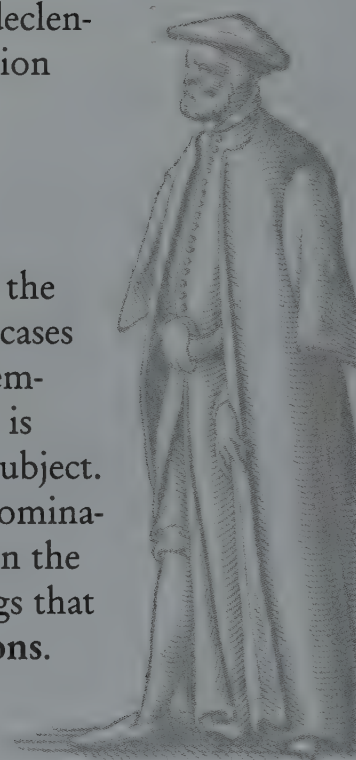
Now, listing the different forms of a noun or adjective all together is called "declining" it, and there are several patterns which nouns or adjectives follow in their declensions, which we remember by number. The ones that you probably know the best are the 1st and 2nd **declensions**. First declension nouns tends to have the vowel "a" in their endings and the 2nd declension nouns tends to have "o" or "u" in their endings.

Remember also that adjectives, since they have to agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number and case, must have endings for all three genders. The most common type of adjectives, which get their feminine endings from the 1st declension and their masculine and neuter endings from the 2nd declension, are usually referred to as "1st and 2nd declension adjectives."

You also studied 3rd declension nouns last year and will see some 3rd declension adjectives soon... but we'll concentrate on the 1st and 2nd declension adjectives for now.

CASE AND NOUN JOB

As we mentioned earlier, the case of a noun tells you what its role in the sentence is, or its **noun job**. Let's get specific now, and recall which cases are used for which purposes. The **nominative** case, you should remember, is used for the **subject** of the sentence. Keep in mind also that it is used for any other noun or adjective which describes or restates the subject. Thus, since the **predicate noun** restates the subject, it is also in the nominative and since the **predicate adjective** describes the subject, it is also in the nominative case. The **accusative** case is used for **direct objects** (things that receive the action of the verb) and as the **object of certain prepositions**. The **ablative** case is used for the **objects of the rest of the prepositions**. In addition, for many purposes which in English would be



expressed by the prepositions “by,” “with” and “from,” Latin simply uses the ablative case by itself. Finally, the **genitive** case is used to show **possession** and for many things for which English would use the preposition “of.” The table below lays out all of the cases we’ve studied, along with the noun jobs and prepositions we should associate with them. We will study the **dative case** next chapter.

Case	Noun Job/s	Associated Preposition/s
Nominative	SN, PrN, PrA	
Genitive	PNA	of
Accusative	DO, OP	
Ablative	OP	by, with, from

Noun Job Abbreviations:

SN = Subject Noun

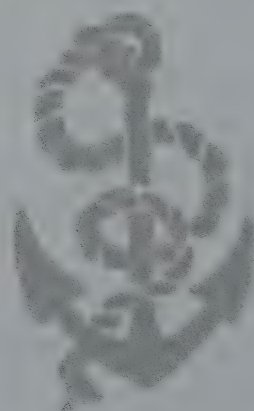
PN = Predicate Noun

PA = Predicate Adjective

PNA = Possessive Noun Adjective

DO = Direct Object

OP = Object of the Preposition



VERB REVIEW

We’ll do some more verb review in the next two units, but for now, let’s just review the very basics. Remember that all verbs have **person**, **number** and **tense**. **Number** is the only characteristic that both nouns and verbs share, and once again it answers the question “how many?” and has two options, **singular** and **plural**. For a verb, the number tells you how many persons, places or things are doing the action. **Person** tells you who is doing the action; a first person verb (*I* or *we*) indicates that the speaker (or a group he is a part of, if plural) is doing the action. A second person verb (*you* or *you all*) indicates that the listener, or person being spoken to (or a group of such people) is doing the action. Finally, a third person verb (*he*, *she*, *it* or *they*) indicates that someone (or a group of people) who is not participating in the conversation (i.e., a “third party”) is doing the action. As for **tense**... that tells you what time something is happening (*tense is time!*). For now we’ll concentrate on the **present tense**, for verbs that occur in the present.

A. Vocabulary:

1. aqua	9. vir
2. cūrō	10. servus
3. portō	11. fēmina
4. salūtō	12. colōnus
5. bibō	13. liber
6. festīnō	14. fessus
7. convocō	15. toga
8. dominus	

B. Chant:

1. Give the 1st and 2nd declension endings (masculine, feminine and neuter).
Remember to label the boxes.

Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
us	ī	a	ae	um	a

2. Give the present tense verb endings. Remember to label the boxes.

	-ō	

C. Grammar:

1. Give the names of the 5 noun cases:
2. All nouns and adjectives have three characteristics. They are g_____, n_____ and c_____.
3. 1st and 2nd declension adjectives have the same endings as _____.
4. All verbs have three characteristics. They are p_____, n_____ and t_____.
5. Tense refers to (choose one):
 - a. how you feel before a big test
 - b. the time when the action of a verb takes place
6. Do you remember all the noun jobs and their abbreviations? Try to correctly match the following lists:

Predicate Adjective
Subject Noun
Direct Object
Predicate Nominative
Possessive Noun Adjective
Object of the Preposition

Nom.	SN PrN PrA
Gen.	PNA
Acc.	DO OP
Abl.	OP



1. Rēx omnēs militēs in atrium convocat.
2. Servī multum cibum prō rēge portant.
3. Colōnus mare nōn cūrat. Is terram cūrat.
4. Nautae magistrum nāvis salūtant.
5. Post virī trāns campum currunt, fessī erunt.
6. Omnēs servī orant esse liberī.
7. Dīcit eīs Iesus: Implēte (fill) hydriās (jars) aquā. John 2:7

Famous Latin Phrases

Can you translate the first two of these Latin phrases?

Terra firma

Festīnā lentē *Make haste slowly*

Vōx populī

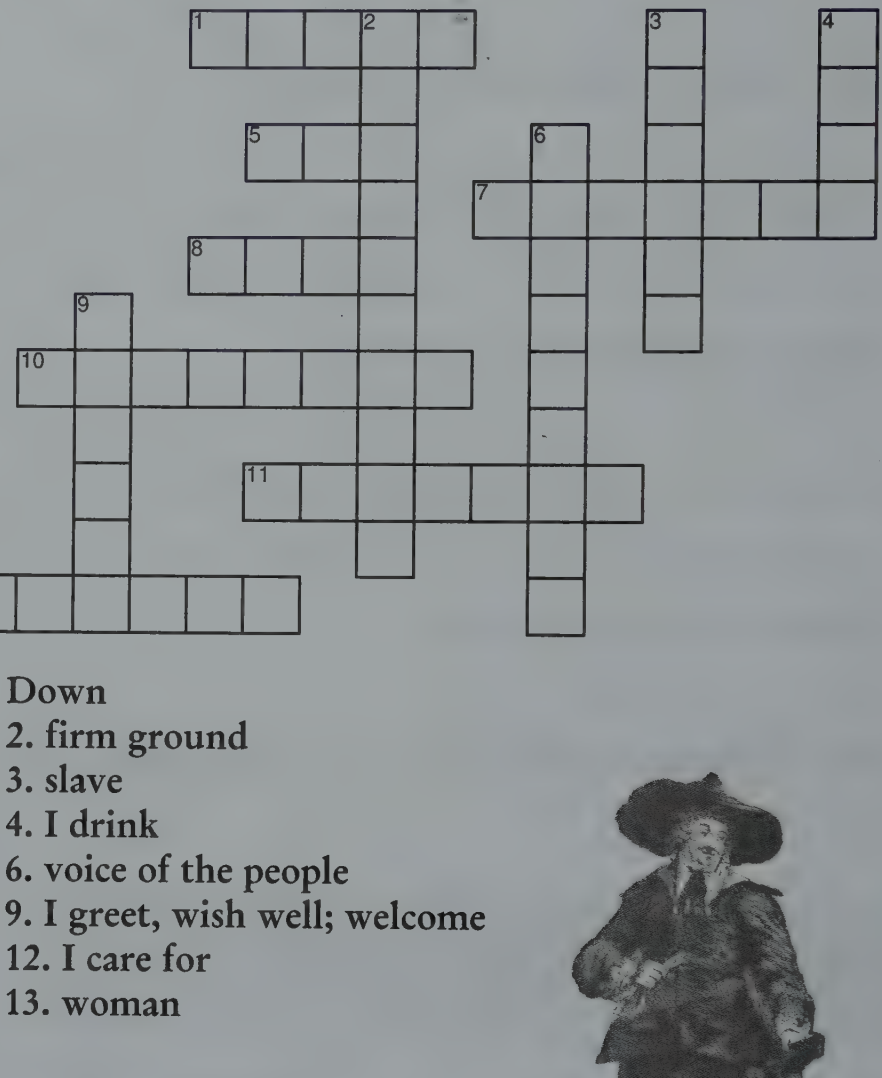
Rāra avis *A rare bird*



Crossword Puzzle:

Across

1. I carry; bring
5. man
7. I call together, assemble
8. toga (clothing)
10. rare bird
11. lord, master
12. colonist; farmer
13. I hurry, rush, accelerate
14. water



Down

2. firm ground
3. slave
4. I drink
6. voice of the people
9. I greet, wish well; welcome
12. I care for
13. woman



Answer the Following:

A Predicate Nominative has this case _____.

A Direct Object takes this case _____.

An Object of the Preposition takes either of these cases _____.

A Possessive Noun Adjective takes this case _____.

Gender, Number and Case characterizes both nouns and _____.

Person, Number and Tense characterizes _____.

A. Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
bibō, bibere, bibī	
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum	
convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum	
festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātum	
portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum	
salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum	
colōnus, -ī	
toga, -ae	
fessus, -a, -um	
liber, libera, liberum	

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
aqua, -ae	
dominus/ domina	
servus/ serva	
vir, -ī	
fēmina, -ae	

C. Chant:

	1 ST declension (f)		2 ND declension (m)		2 ND declension (n)	
	S	P	S	P	S	P
Nominative						
Genitive						
Dative						
Accusative						
Ablative						

Present Tense Verb Endings

	Singular	Plural
1 st Person		
2 nd Person		
3 rd Person		

D. Grammar:

1. Give the names of the 5 noun cases:
2. All nouns and adjectives have three characteristics. They are g_____, n_____ and c_____.
3. 1st and 2nd declension adjectives have the same endings as _____.
4. All verbs have three characteristics. They are p_____, n_____ and t_____.
5. Tense refers to (choose one):
 - a. how you feel before a big test
 - b. the time when the action of a verb takes place
6. Do you remember all the noun jobs and their abbreviations? Try to correctly match the following lists:

Predicate Adjective
Subject Noun
Direct Object
Predicate Nominative
Possessive Noun Adjective
Object of the Preposition

Nom.	SN PrN PrA
Gen.	PNA
Acc.	DO OP
Abl.	OP

Chapter 2

Unit 1

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Noun Endings (3rd Declension)

	3 rd Declension		3 rd Declension Neuter		3 rd Declension I-stem		3 rd Declension Neuter, I-stem	
	S	P	S	P	S	P	S	P
N	-x	-ēs	-x	-a	-x	-ēs	-x	-ia
G	-is	-um	-is	-um	-is	-ium	-is	-ium
D	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus
Acc	-em	-ēs	-x	-a	-em	-ēs	-x	-ia
Abl	-e	-ibus	-e	-ibus	-e	-ibus	-ī	-ibus

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
VERBS	
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum	to collect; choose; read
discō, discere, didicī	to learn
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum	to teach
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	to be eager for; study
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum	to get to know, to recognize
NOUNS	
schola, -ae	school; group of followers, following
liber, librī	book
SPECIAL PHRASES	
scholam habeō	I give a class or lecture
ADVERBS	
etiam	also
nōn	not

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
rēx, rēgis (m)	king
uxor, uxōris (f)	wife
iter, itineris (n)	journey, road
finis, finis (m, i)	limit, boundary
mare, maris (n, i)	sea

D. Verbs that Take the Dative:

A few verbs in Latin take the dative case instead of the accusative case for the direct object. So far you have learned two of these words:

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum*

i.e. – imperō mīlitibus = I give orders to the soldiers, I order the soldiers

studeō, studēre, studuī – may take *either* accusative or dative

i.e. – studeō cibum = I am eager for food
or studeō cibō

* Imperō takes the “dative of person” but the “accusative of thing” as its object.

Note below the correct and incorrect way of using these verbs.

Incorrect (with acc. for D.O.)	Correct (with dative for object)
Rēx <i>servum</i> (acc.) imperat.	Rēx <i>servō</i> (dat.) imperat.
Rēx <i>mīlitēs</i> (acc.) imperat.	Rēx <i>mīlitibus</i> (dat.) imperat.
	Discipula <i>librō</i> (dat.) studet.
	Discipula <i>librum</i> (acc.) studet.

While this switching of the dative for accusative for the object may be confusing, it only occurs with a very few verbs! Just learn these verbs (from the beginning) as taking the dative for the object. They will always be listed as such in your vocabulary lists, as in *studeō, studēre (+dat.)*.

3RD DECLENSION WORDS:

In this chapter we review the 3rd declension words, and as I'm sure you've already noted, there are several variations on the 3rd declension theme. First, note that the neuter version of the 3rd declension has basically the same pattern, except that it follows the **neuter rule**. The neuter rule, as you may recall, is that **neuter nouns always have the same endings in the accusative that they have in the nominative**, and **the nominative and accusative plural always end in a short a**. Thus, since 3rd declension neuter nouns have a variety of different nominative singular endings (represented on the table with the variable "x") 3rd declension neuter nouns will have the same variety of endings in the accusative singular. The key thing to remember is simply that whatever the word form is in the nominative singular, it will have the same exact form in the accusative singular. At the same time, just like 2nd declension neuter words, 3rd declension neuter words will have a short "a" ending in the nominative and accusative plural.

The other key variation on the 3rd declension theme is that of the **I-stem** pattern. Just as the chant shows, most regular I-stems have just one little difference from regular 3rd declension nouns: they have an extra "i" before the "um" ending in the genitive plural. **Neuter I-stems** have a few more "i's" in them, though. In addition to that extra "i" in the genitive plural, they have a long "ī" in the ablative singular (instead of an "e"), as well as an extra "i" in the nominative and accusative plural.

To summarize, while there are four major variations on the 3rd declension theme, they are easy to remember if you just remember to apply the neuter rule and remember which I-stem forms have that extra "i".

Here are 3 rules for identifying I-stem nouns:

1. masculine and feminine nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-ēs** or **-is**, AND whose nominative and genitive forms are parasyllabic (have the same number of syllables). e.g.: **finis, fīnis**
2. masculine and feminine nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-x** or **-s**, AND whose stem ends in a double consonant. e.g.: **urbs, urbis**
3. neuter nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-al**, **-ar**, or **-e**. e.g.: **mare, maris**



THE LAST CASE: THE DATIVE

Now it is time to learn the last of the cases, the **Dative Case**. The primary purpose of the dative case is for an indirect object. That is, it is used for something that is indirectly affected by the action of a verb. Take for example this English sentence:

The teacher gave *Mark* the book.

In this sentence *Mark*, the indirect object, is in italics.

In Latin it would be written as follows:

Magister *Marcō* librum dat.

Now, note how we could say the same thing in English using the preposition “to” without changing the essential meaning:

The teacher gave the book *to Mark*.

There are many things for which we would use the preposition “of,” but in Latin can be expressed using the genitive case (without a preposition). There are many things for which in English we use the prepositions “to” or “for,” but in Latin can be expressed using a noun in the dative case.

The table below is just like the one from last week’s grammar pages, but this one also includes the dative case (which is shaded):

Case	Noun Job/s	Associated Preposition/s
Nominative	SN, PrN, PrA	
Genitive	PNA	of
Dative	IO	to, for
Accusative	DO, OP	
Ablative	OP	by, with, from

A. Vocabulary:

1. legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum

choose

discō, discere, didicī

to learn

3. doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum

teach

4. studeō, studēre, studuī (+dat.)

study

5. cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum

recognize

6. schola, -ae

school

7. liber, librī

book

8. scholam habeō

lecture

9. etiam

also

10. nōn

not

11. rēx, rēgis (m)

king

12. uxor, uxōris (f)

wife

13. iter, itineris (n)

journey

14. fīnis, finis (m, i)

limit

15. mare, maris (n, i)

sea

B. Chant: Give the 3rd declension endings (masculine/feminine, neuter, I-stem masc./fem. and I-stem neuter). Remember to label the boxes.

	3 rd declension		3 rd neuter		3 rd I-stem		3 rd neuter I-stem	
	S	P	S	P	S	P	S	P
N	X	ēs	X	a	X	ēs	X	ia
G	is	um	is	um	is	ium	is	ium
D	T	ibus	T	ibus	T	ibus	T	ibus
AC	em	ēs	X	a	em	ēs	X	ia
AB	e	ibus	e	ibus	e	ibus	T	ibus

C. Grammar:

1. Which I-stem form (f & m) is different than a normal 3rd declension noun?

ia ium

Genitive plural

2. Which ones are different in a 3rd declension neuter?

i ium

ia ia accusative plural

3. Which forms have an extra "i" in the I-stem neuters?

umi

nom

1. Magister discipulōs vocat.

The teacher calls the students

2. Discipulī ad scholam currunt.

The students run to school

3. Discipulī sedent.

4. Magister inquit, "Librōs novōs tibi dō. Ex illīs discitis bene*."

Laugh
Mister
Says
to
them

5. Marcus domum currit cum librō novō. "Ecce, māter! Librum novum habeō!"

6. Marcus librum legēbat.

7. Postrīdie (the next day), magister scholam habet. Magister inquit, "Librum doceō, librō discite!" "Ē librō doceō, ē librō discite!"

8. Marcus et discipulī tōtī legunt et student. Post multās horās, fessī sunt. Marcus ad casam nōn currit, sed ambulat.

9. Māter eius rogat, "Cūr fessus es?" Marcus respondet, "Hic liber perdit** oculōs meōs!"

FAMOUS LATIN PHRASES

ex librīs from the books of
docendō discimus we learn by teaching
errāre hūmānum est to err is human
finem respice consider the end

* bene: well

** perdit: ruins

AN EXERCISE FEATURING 3RD DECLENSION NOUNS AND THE DATIVE CASE

1. In scholā, magister discipulīs librōs dat.

prep abs An i o PP
in school the teacher give books to the students

2. Magister etiam discipulīs tabulā dat.

teacher also students table give
The teacher also gives the students a table

3. Discipulī dicunt, "Gratiās tibi agimus."

student formal gratia
The students say thank you

4. Rēx epistulam parvam uxōrī mittit. Servus uxōrī epistulam dat. Haec verba sunt in epistulā:

king letter small wife servant wife letter the
The king sends a small letter to the wife, The servant gives the letter to queen.

"Rēgīna mea, cupisne ire ad lītus? Mare pulchrum est nunc (or iam).
Iter ad mare cupiō!"

5. Rēgīna epistulam scrībit et rēgī eam mittit. Epistula rēgīnae ūnum verbum habet:

Eāmus! (let us go!)

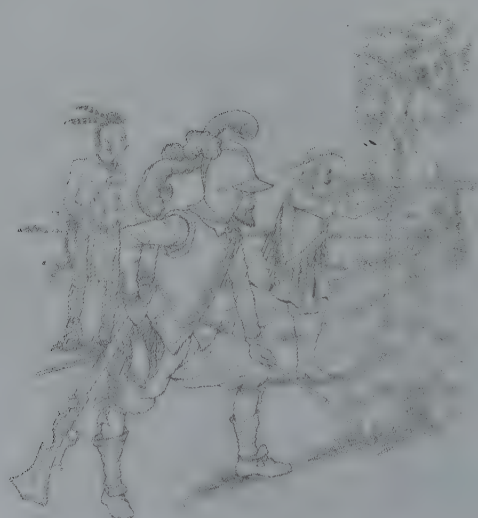


A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum	
discō, discere, didicī	
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum	
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum	
schola, -ae	
liber, librī	
scholam habeō	
etiam	
nōn	

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
rēx, rēgis (m)	
uxor, uxōris (f)	
iter, itineris (n)	
fīnis, fīnis (m, i)	
mare, maris (n, i)	



C. Chant: Noun Endings (3rd Declension)

	3 rd Declension		3 rd Declension Neuter		3 rd Declension I-stem		3 rd Declension Neuter, I-stem	
	S	P	S	P	S	P	S	P
N								
G								
D								
Acc								
Abl								

D. Grammar:

1. Which I-stem form (f & m) is different than a normal 3rd declension noun?
2. Which ones are different in a 3rd declension neuter?
3. Which forms have an extra "i" in the I-stem neuters?



Chapter 3

Unit 1

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 3rd Declension Adjectives (2-Termination)

	Case	M	F	N
Singular	Nom.	brevis		breve
	Gen.	brevis		brevis
	Dat.	brevī		brevī
	Acc.	brevem		breve
	Abl.	brevī		brevī
Plural	Nom.	brevēs		brevia
	Gen.	brevium		brevium
	Dat.	brevibus		brevibus
	Acc.	brevēs		brevia
	Abl.	brevibus		brevibus

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
brevis, breve	short, shallow, short-lived
commūnis, commūne	shared, common
dulcis, dulce	sweet
fortis, forte	strong, brave
difficilis, difficile	difficult
facilis, facile	easy
gravis, grave	heavy, serious
levis, leve	light, fickle
nōbilis, nōbile	well-known, noble
omnis, omne	all, whole, every

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
pecūnia, -ae	money
poena, -ae	penalty, punishment
rosa, -ae	rose
sententia, -ae	opinion, sentence
vīta, -ae	life



3rd Declension Adjectives

Take a careful look at the table of this chapter's chant. I want you to notice two things about it. First, I want you to notice that, like almost all 3rd declension adjectives, **brevis** is declined pretty much like a typical I-stem of the 3rd declension. Can you see the only difference? It's in the ablative singular, which is usually “-e” for masculine and feminine 3rd declension I-stem nouns. 3rd declension adjectives, though, are just a bit more “hard-core” in their “I-stem-ness,” if you will, and has that “-ī” in one more place.

I want you to notice one more thing about these adjectives: they have the same forms in the feminine and masculine, but several different ones in the neuter. This is also not so strange, if you think about it. Remember how similar those masculine and feminine 3rd declension words are? In fact, that's why we've been memorizing which gender 3rd declension nouns are: there is nothing that different between the two in form.

In any case, that is why **brevis** is called a “2-termination” adjective. The word “termination” just means ending, and 2-termination adjectives have two different endings in the nominative singular. One of these endings is generally “-is” for the masculine and feminine forms, which is like the genitive, singular form, and like many masculine and feminine 3rd declension nouns, such as **avis** and **navis**. The other nominative singular ending is “-e,” just like many 3rd declension, neuter I-stem words, like **mare**.



A. Vocabulary:

1. fortis	Brave	9. omnis	all
2. difficilis	difficult	10. nōbilis	noble
3. brevis	short	11. pecūnia	\$ money
4. facilis	easy	12. poena	penalty
5. gravis	heavy	13. rosa	rose
6. dulcis	sweet	14. vīta	life
7. levis	light	15. sententia	sentence
8. commūnis	shared		

B. Chant: Give the forms for the adjective “brevis” (both the masculine/feminine and the neuter ones). Remember to label the boxes.

C. Grammar:

1. 2-termination adjectives have 2 different _____ in the nominative singular.

Some brave sailors face a strong storm in their ship.

1. Decem nautae et ūnus magister nōbilis ad Ītaliā nāvigābant.
2. Nautae nōmen nāvī dant. Nōmen nāvis “Rosa Mariūm” est.
3. Tempestās magna et gravis in eīs cadit.
4. Magister nōbilis clāmat, “Valēte, nautae fortēs! Haec tempestās brevis erit!”
5. Omnēs nautae contrā tempestātem labōrant.
6. Labor est magna et difficilis.
7. Post trēs hōrās tempestās est gravis. Labor nautārum facilis nōn est, sed omnēs fortēs sunt.

FAMOUS LATIN PHRASES

Amor vincit omnia. Love conquers all.

Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī. It is sweet and seemly to die for one's country.

Ars longa, vīta brevis. Art is long, live is brief.

Fortēs fortūna iuvat. Fortunè favors the brave.

Quot hominēs, tot sententiae. There are as many opinions as there are men.

The *-tās* and *-tūdō* suffixes:

As you no doubt know, sometimes a noun and an adjective can have closely related meanings. Several of the adjectives from this week's list can be changed into nouns by adding either the suffix *-tās* or the suffix *-tūdō*. Check out the following examples:

Adjective	+	Suffix	=	Noun	Meaning
brevis	+	-tās	=	brevitās, brevitātis	the quality of being brief or short
fortis	+	-tūdō	=	fortitūdō, fortitūdinis	the quality of being brave
gravis	+	-tās	=	gravitās, gravitātis	the quality of being serious or heavy
nōbilis	+	-tās	=	nōbilitās, nōbilitātis	the quality of being famous or noble

This type of noun is often called an “abstract noun,” because they stand for an abstract idea, rather than a concrete object (or person or place). Now try combining these adjectives with the listed suffix to create abstract nouns of your own. Double-check yourself using a Latin dictionary. Then see if you can come up with a couple more on your own!

Adjective	+	Suffix	=	Noun	Meaning
commūnis	+	-tās	=		
difficilis	+	-tās	=		
levis	+	-tās	=		
facilis	+	-tās	=		
magnus	+	-tūdō	=		
liber	+	-tās	=		
cīvis*	+	-tās	=		
	+		=		
	+		=		

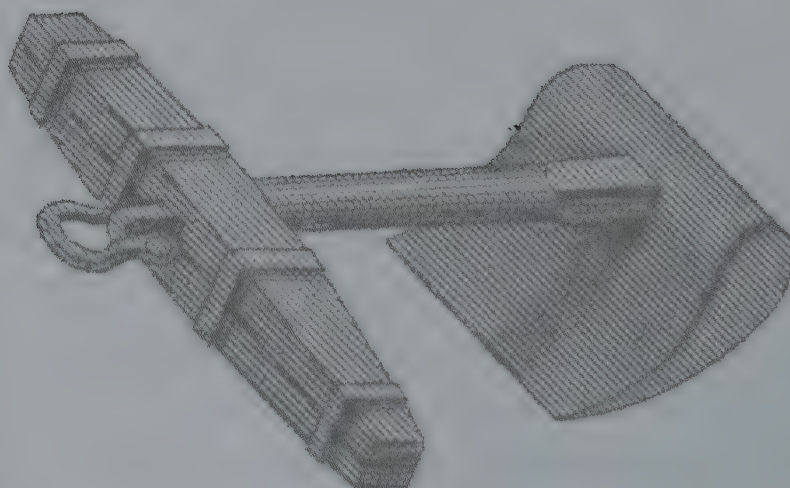
*Note that *cīvis* is actually a noun rather than an adjective. Sometimes a suffix can be added to a noun to create an abstract noun.

A. New Vocabulary:

Latin	English
brevis, breve	
commūnis, commūne	
dulcis, dulce	
fortis, forte	
difficilis, difficile	
facilis, facile	
gravis, grave	
levis, leve	
nōbilis, nōbile	
omnis, omne	

B. Review Vocabulary:

Latin	English
pecūnia, -ae	
poena, -ae	
rosa, -ae	
sententia, -ae	
vīta, -ae	

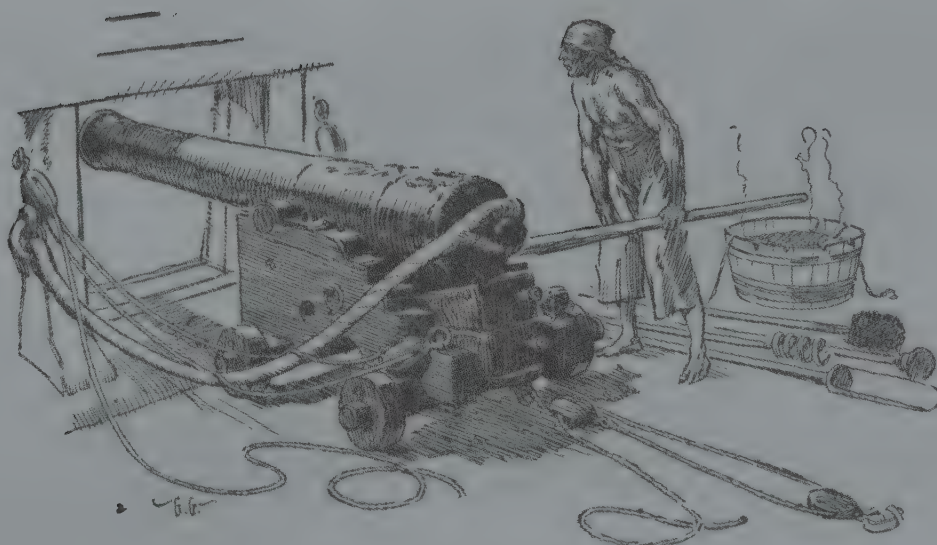


C. Chant:

	Case	M	F	N
Singular				
Plural				

D. Grammar:

1. 2-termination adjectives have 2 different _____ in the nominative singular.



Chapter 4

Unit 1

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 3rd Declension Adjectives (3-Termination)

Singular	Case	M	F	N
	Nom.	celer	celeris	celere
	Gen.	celeris	celeris	celeris
	Dat.	celerī	celerī	celerī
	Acc.	celerem	celerem	celere
	Abl.	celerī	celerī	celerī
Plural	Nom.	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
	Gen.	celerium	celerium	celerium
	Dat.	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
	Acc.	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
	Abl.	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
<i>3-Termination Adjectives</i>	

celer, celeris, celere swift

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp

<i>2-Termination Adjectives</i>	
---------------------------------	--

mortālis, mortāle mortal

immortālis, immortalē immortal

incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe

cīvilis, cīvile civil (of citizens)

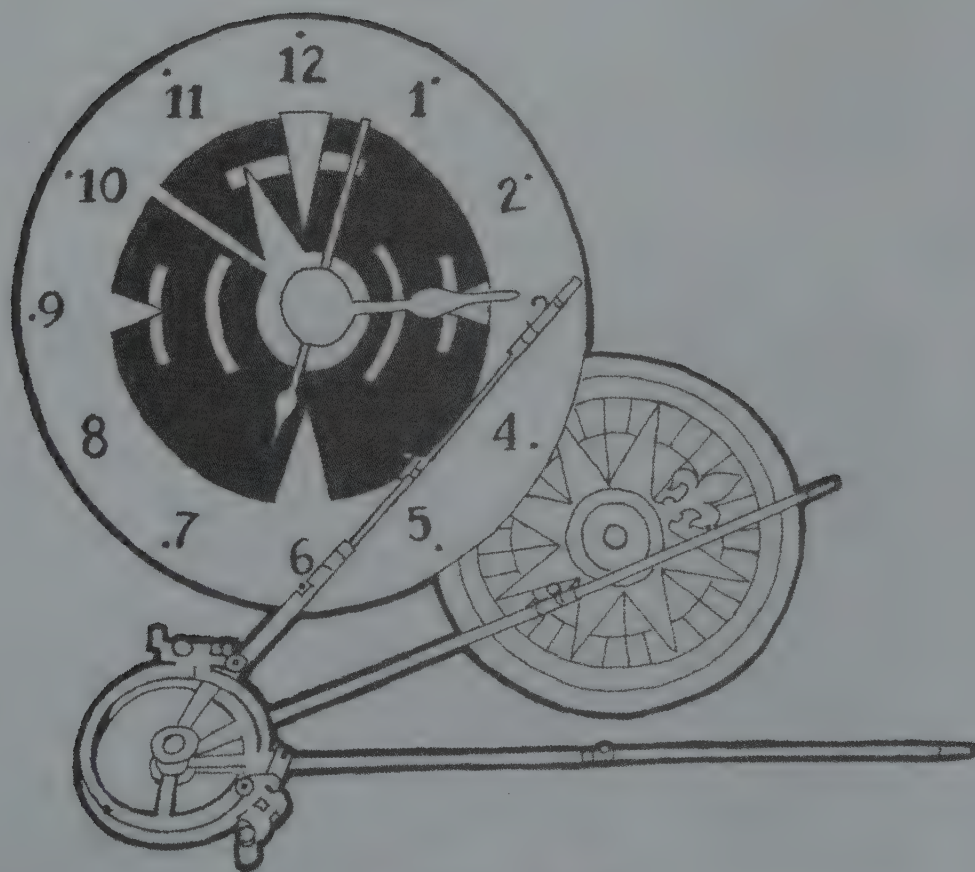
militāris, militāre military (of soldiers)

puerilis, puerile boyish, childish (of boys)

virilis, virile manly (of a man)

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
cūra, -ae	care
culpa, -ae	fault, blame, sin
glōria, -ae	glory
angulus, -ī	angle, corner, nook
calculus, -ī	pebble



3-Termination 3rd Declension Adjectives

This week's chant represents a smaller class of 3rd declension adjectives that has a different ending for the masculine and feminine, singular, nominative forms. Notice that these aren't really that different, though, from the 2-termination adjectives, since it's only in the nominative singular that there are three separate versions. In fact, in case you didn't notice last week, it's only really in the nominative and accusative that there is ever any difference. The table below shows all the forms as well, but in a way that emphasizes the cases for which there are different forms and which ones have the same form across the board.

#	Case	M	F	N
Singular	N	celer	celeris	celere
	G	celeris		
	D	celerī		
	Acc		celerem	celere
	Abl	celerī		
Plural	N		celerēs	celerīa
	G	celerium		
	D	celeribus		
	Acc		celerēs	celerīa
	Abl	celeribus		

The chart below gives a similar layout for 2-termination adjectives:

#	Case	M & F	N
Singular	N	brevis	breve
	G	brevis	
	D	brevī	
	Acc	brevem	breve
	Abl	brevī	
Plural	N	brevēs	brevia
	G	brevium	
	D	brevibus	
	Acc	brevēs	brevia
	Abl	brevibus	

Every now and then, an English word is almost exactly like the Latin word from which it derives. A perfect example are the words “**virile**” and “**puerile**,” which look just like the neuter forms of **virilis** and **puerilis**, and, wouldn’t you know it, mean almost exactly the same thing! There are several other words that have very similar English derivatives from this week’s list. See if you can find some from this week’s new and review lists.

Hint #1: Start by lopping the ending off of the word.

Hint #2: Sometimes the ending is replaced with a “-y” or a silent “-e.”

Hint #3: Sometimes the English derivative is a different part of speech. (e.g., an adjective becomes a noun.)

Latin Word	English Derivative
mortalis	mortal



A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
celer, celeris, celere	
ācer, ācris, ācre	
mortālis, mortāle	
immortālis, immortalē	
incolumis, incolume	
cīvilis, cīvile	
militāris, militāre	
puerīlis, puerīle	
virīlis, virīle	

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
cūra, -ae	
culpa, -ae	
glōria, -ae	
angulus, -ī	
calculus, -ī	



C. Chant: Give the forms for the adjective “celer” (in masculine, feminine and neuter genders). Remember to label the boxes.

D. Grammar:

In which case do 3-termination, 3rd declension adjectives have 3 terminations?



Chapter 5

Unit 1

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 3rd Declension Adjectives (1-Termination)

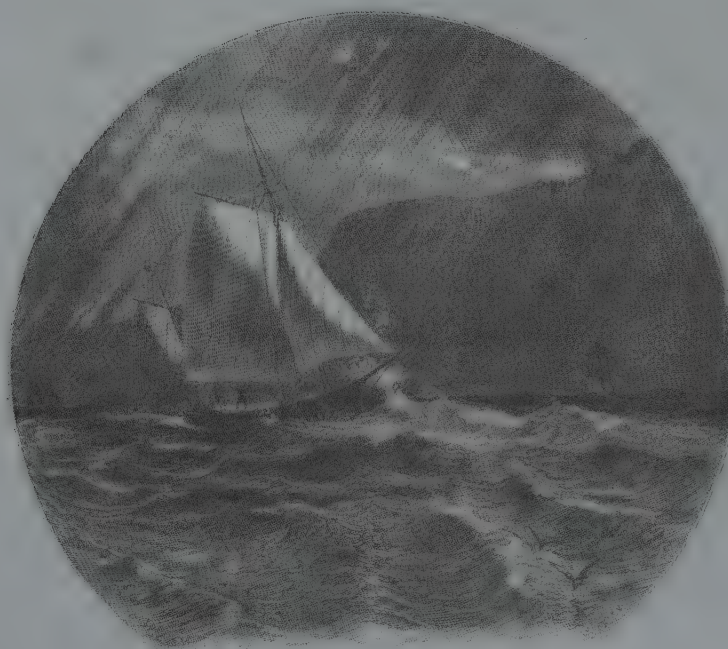
	Case	M	F	N
Singular	Nom.	audāx		audāx
	Gen.	audācis		audācis
	Dat.	audācī		audācī
	Acc.	audācem		audāx
	Abl.	audācī		audācī
Plural	Nom.	audācēs		audācia
	Gen.	audācium		audācium
	Dat.	audācibus		audācibus
	Acc.	audācēs		audācia
	Abl.	audācibus		audācibus

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
audāx, audācis	bold <i>Audax + 7</i>
ingēns, ingentis	huge <i>ingeni</i>
fēlix, fēlicis	happy, lucky, fruitful <i>fite</i>
infēlix, infēlicis	unhappy, unlucky, unfruitful
vetus, veteris	old, aged; long-standing <i>Vetrah</i>
ferōx, ferōcis	fierce, warlike, wild <i>feral</i>
prūdēns, prūdentis	sensible, prudent <i>prudens</i>
dīves, dīvitis	rich; costly
potēns, potentis	capable; powerful <i>potent</i>
absēns, absentis	absent <i>absent</i>
praesēns, praesentis	present <i>praesent</i>
pauper, pauperis	poor <i>pauper</i>

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c, i)	youth, young person <i>Adulences</i>
frāter, frātris (m)	brother <i>fraternity</i>
prīnceps, prīncipis (c)	leader, first one, prince <i>Prince</i>
cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)	citizenship, state, commonwealth <i>Citizen</i>
soror, sorōris (f)	sister <i>Sorority</i>



1-Termination, 3rd Declension Adjectives:

By now I'm sure you're not at all surprised that 1-termination, 3rd declension adjectives are those with only one ending (or "termination") in their nominative, singular forms. Don't let this label fool you, though. There are still three forms in which there's a difference between the masculine/feminine and the neuter forms. Can you identify them in the table below?

	Case	M & F		N
Singular	Nom.	audāx		
	Gen.	audācis		
	Dat.	audācī		
	Acc.	audācem		audāx
	Abl.	audācī		
Plural	Nom.	audācēs		audācia
	Gen.	audācium		
	Dat.	audācibus		
	Acc.	audācēs		audācia
	Abl.	audācibus		

Hopefully, you've noticed that there's a difference in the accusative singular, nominative plural and accusative plural forms. There's actually a logical reason for this and it's the **"neuter" rule**. Since the accusative and nominative forms need to be the same for neuter words, the accusative, singular, neuter forms can't have the usual **"-em"** ending. In the same way, the plural forms (in both nominative and accusative) are going to exhibit that characteristic **"-ia"** ending that neuter, I-stem nouns of the 3rd declension have. When you look at it this way, the forms for these words aren't hard to learn at all!

One other thing to note: this type of adjective isn't listed in a dictionary or word list like most adjectives, which is to say that they aren't listed by giving masculine, feminine and neuter forms. They are rather listed by giving their nominative singular and genitive singular forms, as is done for nouns. There are two reasons for this. The first and most obvious reason is because the nominative singular form is the same for all three genders, and there would be no point in listing the same form three times. The second reason is because, like many 3rd declension nouns, the nominative form doesn't always give you the stem, so the genitive is listed for this purpose.

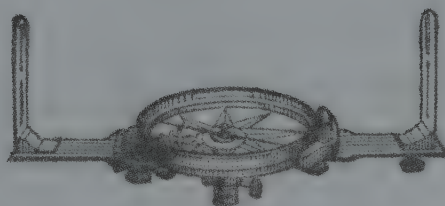
The *-ālis*/*-ānus*/*-āris* suffix:

No doubt you caught the fact that several of the words from last week's word list were very similar to some other Latin words that you've learned. In this case, what we see is a suffix added on to a noun to make it into an adjective. Here are four prime examples:

Noun	+	Suffix	=	Adjective	Meaning
cīvis	+	-ālis	=	cīvilis	pertaining to citizenship
militēs	+	-āris	=	militāris	pertaining to the military
puer	+	-ālis	=	puerilis	pertaining to a boy, boyish, etc.
vir	+	-ālis	=	virilis	pertaining to a man, manly, etc.

Notice that often the “-a-” in the suffix changes to another vowel; don't let that throw you off! Note also, that in each case this *-ālis*/*-āris* suffix adds an idea of “pertaining to” to the root noun. Now see if you can come up with a few more such adjectives by putting one of these endings on the noun listed. Check your answer by looking up the resulting word in a Latin dictionary. Then see if you can come up with a couple on your own (The Latin nouns listed are ones that you've had before; if you can't remember what they mean, look them up).

Noun	+	Suffix	=	Adjective	Meaning
vīta	+	-ālis	=		
lūna	+	-āris	=		
populus	+	-āris	=		
nāvis	+	-ālis	=		
urbs	+	-ānus	=		
	+		=		
	+		=		

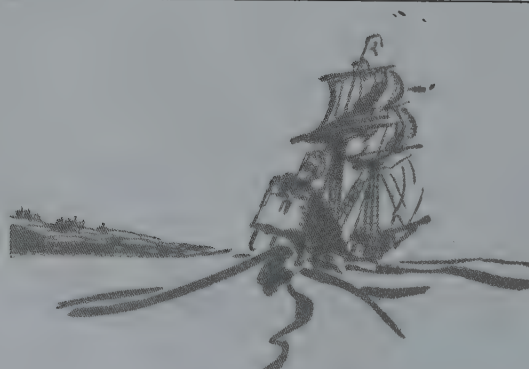


A. New Vocabulary:

Latin	English
audāx, audācis	
ingēns, ingentis	
fēlix, fēlicis	
īnfēlix, īnfēlicis	
vetus, veteris	
ferōx, ferōcis	
prūdēns, prūdentis	
dīves, dīvitis	
potēns, potentis	
absēns, absentis	
praesēns, praesentis	
pauper, pauperis	

B. Review Vocabulary:

Latin	English
adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c, i)	
frāter, frātris (m)	
prīnceps, prīncipis (c)	
cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)	
soror, sorōris (f)	



C. Chant: Give the forms for the adjectives “celer” and “audāx” (both the masculine/feminine and the neuter ones). Remember to label the boxes.

D. Grammar:

In which of the 5 cases do 1-termination, 3rd declension adjectives actually still have 2 terminations?



Chapter 6

Unit 1

REVIEW:

Review of Chapters 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5

After another five weeks of study you have learned another 50 words. Check the boxes of each word you don't know. Then review those words as much as you need to in order to master them. Remember to chant using your eyes, ears and voice.

Chapter 1

- ☐ bibō, bibere, bibī
- ☐ cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum
- ☐ convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum
- ☐ festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātum
- ☐ portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum
- ☐ salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum
- ☐ colōnus, -ī
- ☐ toga, -ae
- ☐ fessus, -a, -um
- ☐ liber, libera, liberum
- ☐ aqua, -ae
- ☐ dominus/ domina
- ☐ servus/ serva
- ☐ vir, -ī
- ☐ fēmina, -ae

Chapter 2

- ☐ legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum
- ☐ discō, discere, didicī
- ☐ doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum
- ☐ studeō, studēre, studī (+ dat.)
- ☐ cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum
- ☐ schola, -ae
- ☐ liber, librī

- ☐ scholam habeō
- ☐ etiam
- ☐ nōn
- ☐ rēx, rēgis (m)
- ☐ uxor, uxōris (f)
- ☐ iter, itineris (n)
- ☐ fīnis, fīnis (m, i)
- ☐ mare, maris (n, i)

Chapter 3

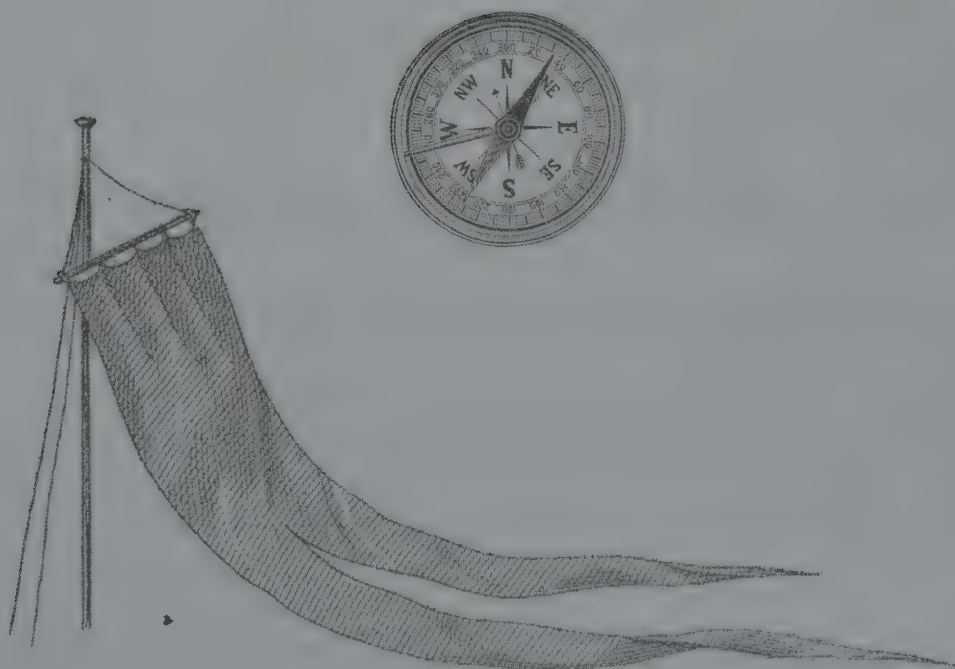
- ☐ brevis, breve
- ☐ commūnis, commūne
- ☐ dulcis, dulce
- ☐ fortis, forte
- ☐ difficilis, difficile
- ☐ facilis, facile
- ☐ gravis, grave
- ☐ levis, leve
- ☐ nōbilis, nōbile
- ☐ omnis, omne
- ☐ pecūnia, -ae
- ☐ poena, -ae
- ☐ rosa, -ae
- ☐ sententia, -ae
- ☐ vīta, -ae

Chapter 4

- ☐ celer, celeris, celere
- ☐ ācer, ācris, ācre
- ☐ pauper, pauperis
- ☐ mortālis, mortāle
- ☐ immortalis, immortalē
- ☐ incolumis, incolume
- ☐ cīvilis, cīvile
- ☐ militāris, militāre
- ☐ puerilis, puerile
- ☐ virilis, virile
- ☐ cūra, -ae
- ☐ culpa, -ae
- ☐ glōria, -ae
- ☐ angulus, -ī
- ☐ calculus, -ī

Chapter 5

- ☐ audāx, audācis
- ☐ ingēns, ingentis
- ☐ fēlix, fēlicis
- ☐ infēlix, infēlicis
- ☐ vetus, veteris
- ☐ ferōx, ferōcis
- ☐ prūdēns, prūdentis
- ☐ dīves, dīvitis
- ☐ potēns, potentis
- ☐ absēns, absentis
- ☐ praesēns, praesentis
- ☐ adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c, i)
- ☐ frāter, frātris (m)
- ☐ prīnceps, prīncipis (c)
- ☐ cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)
- ☐ soror, sorōris (f)



Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 1	
bibō	imbibe, libation, bib
cūrō	cure, curator, curious, curiosity, care, careful
convocō	convocation
festinō	festinate, festinately
portō	transport, import, report, port, airport, porch, transportation, portable
salūtō	salute, salutation, salutatorian
colōnus, -ī	colonize, colony, colonial, colonist, colonization
toga, -ae	toga
fessus, -a, -um	no derivatives
līber, lībera, līberum	liberate, liberty, liberation, liberal, illiberal
aqua, -ae	aqua, aquamarine, aquatic
dominus/ domina	dominate, domination, dominion, domain, indomitable
servus/ serva	serve, service, servant, serviceable, reserve, preserve
vir, -ī	virile, virtue
fēmina, -ae	feminize, female, feminine, effeminate

Write 2 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

Chapter 2	
legō	legible, illegible, legend, legendary
discō	discipulus (discipline, disciple, disciplinary)
doceō	docent, docile
studeō	study, student, studies, studious, astute
cognōscō	recognize, incognito, cognizant
schola, -ae	school, scholar, schooling, scholarship, scholastic, scholarly
liber, librī	library, librarian
scholam habēō	no derivatives
etiam	no derivatives
nōn	often added to adjectives as in <i>nonreligious</i> or <i>nonpartisan</i>
rēx, rēgis	regal, royalty, royal, regicide, regimen
uxor, uxōris	uxorious
iter, itineris	itinerary, itinerate, itinerant
fīnis, fīnis	final, finally, finale, finish
mare, maris	maritime, marine, submarine, mariner

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

Chapter 3	
brevis	abbreviate, brief, briefcase, briefly
commūnis	commune, communicate, common, uncommon, communal, communism, communist
dulcis	dulcify, dulcimer, dulcet
fortis	fortify, fort, fortification, forte
difficilis	difficult, difficulty
facilis	facilitate, facility, facile, facilely, faculty
gravis	gravitate, grave, gravity, gravely, gravitas
levis	levitate, alleviate, relieve, levity, levitation
nōbilis	noble, nobly, nobility, ignoble
omnis	omniscient, omnivorous, omnibus
pecūnia	pecuniary, impecunious
poena	penalize, penalty, penal, penitentiary
rosa	rose, rosy, rosaceous, rouge, rosary
sententia	sentence
vīta	vitalize, revitalize, vital, vitamin

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The brave sailors were walking to the ship.
2. The ship was large and heavy.
3. The name of the ship is *The Rose of the Seas*.
4. The sailors have a difficult journey.
5. The sailors love the noble captain.

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

Chapter 4	
celer	celerity
ācer	acrid
pauper	pauper
mortālis	mortal, mortality, mortals
immortālis	immortal, immortalize, immortality
incolumis	no derivatives
cīvilis	civil, civilized
mīlitāris	military, militaristic
puerīlis	puerile
virīlis	virile
cūra	cure, curator, curious, curiosity, care, careful
culpa	culpable, culpability
glōria	glorify, glorious, glory, glorification, inglorious
angulus	angle, angular, triangle, rectangle
calculus	calculate, calculation, calculus, incalculable

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The swift ship sails past sharp rocks.
2. The manly sailors are not tired.
3. The ship and sailors are safe.
4. The captain is without fault.



Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

Chapter 5	
audāx	audacious, audacity
ingēns	no derivatives
fēlix	felicitous, felicity
infēlix	infelicitous, infelicity
vetus	veteran
ferōx	fierce, ferocious
prūdēns	prudent, imprudent, prudential, prudence
dīves	dives (a rich man)
potēns	potent, impotent, potentate, potential
absēns	absent, absentee
praesēns	present
adulēscēns	adolescent, adolescence
frāter	fraternize, fraternity, fraternal, fratricide
prīnceps	principal, prince, princely
cīvitās	no derivatives
soror	sorority, sororal

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The bold sailors will fight the wild men.
2. All of the sailors are unhappy.
3. The captain of the ship speaks to the leader of the men.
4. One of the sailors is absent.
5. A young man runs into the woods of the island.

Chapter 7

Unit 2

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Verb Tense Endings (Present System)

Tense:	Present		Imperfect		Future	
Number:	S	P	S	P	S	P
1 st	-ō	-mus	-bam	-bāmus	-bō	-bimus
2 nd	-s	-tis	-bās	-bātis	-bis	-bitis
3 rd	-t	-nt	-bat	-bant	-bit	-bunt

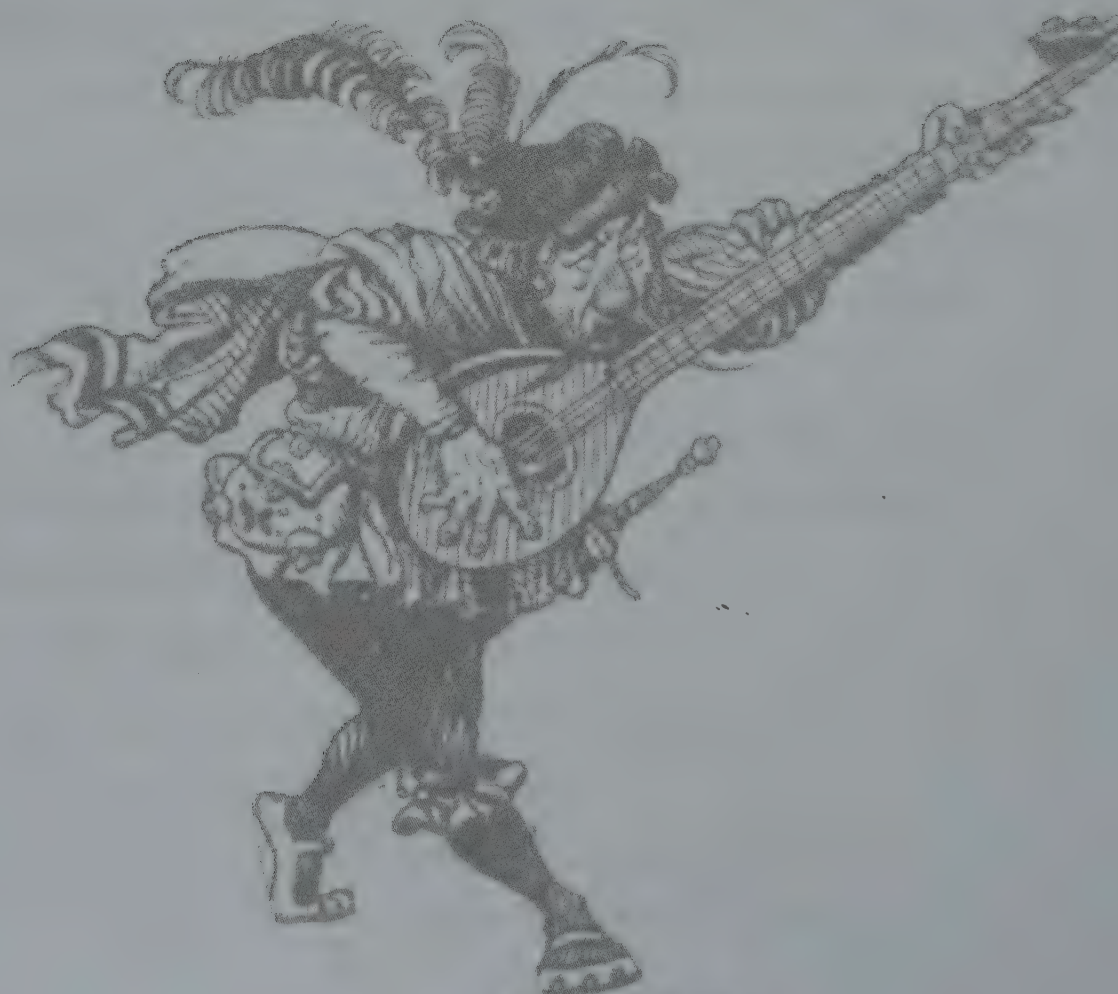
B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum	to exert, hasten, march
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	to turn
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum + <i>dative</i> object	to please, to be pleasing to
condō, condere, condidī, conditum	to found, establish
lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī	to shine, be bright
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum	to hold back
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum	to bring back, report
mīlitō, mīlitāre	campaign, serve as a soldier
castra, -ōrum	camp (neuter plural)
hasta, -ae	spear
scūtum, -ī	shield
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum	left

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
lēgātus, -ī	lieutenant
gladius, -ī	sword
dux, ducis (m)	leader
mīles, mīlitis (m)	soldier
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	send
imperō, imperāre (+ dative of person, + acc. of thing)*	order

* imperō (like crēdō) takes the dative for the direct object when the direct object is a person (called “dative of person”). When the direct object is a thing it takes the accusative case (“dative of thing”).



The Present (or Present-Future-Imperfect) System Tenses

This chapter's chants review the different verb tenses that you have learned so far. All of them fit into what is called the **present system**. They are called this because all of them start with what is called the **present stem** and then simply add on the appropriate endings. The present stem is found in the second principal part (the infinitive). We simply drop the "re" from the infinitive and we have our present stem! From the present stem we form three tenses: the present, the future and the imperfect. It seems confusing to call this the **present system** when it contains not only the present tense, but remember that it includes also the future and imperfect tenses! If it helps, you can think of this as the present-future-imperfect system. In the examples below you can see how we get the present (or present-future-imperfect) stem.

1	2	3	4
<u>amō</u>	<u>amāre</u>	<u>amāvī</u>	<u>amātum</u>
↓	↓	↓	↓
amā	amāv	amātum	
Present Stem		Perfect Stem	Supine

1	2	3	4
<u>videō</u>	<u>vidēre</u>	<u>vīdī</u>	<u>vīsum</u>
↓	↓	↓	↓
vidē	vīd	vīsum	
Present Stem		Perfect Stem	Supine

To make a present, future or imperfect verb, we simply take the present stem and add the endings for each tense. If you take **amā** and add **ō, s, t, mus, tis, nt** you have the present tense; if you take **amā** and add **bam, bās, bat, bāmus, bātis, bant** you have the imperfect tense; if take **amā** and add **bō, bis, bit, bimus, bitis, bunt** you have the future tense. We will learn about using the **perfect stem** next chapter! The supine you will learn later.

Using the Present System Tenses

As we've mentioned before, **present tense** verbs are used to describe things that are happening now and **future tense** verbs are used for things that haven't happened yet. The **imperfect tense** is a little more complicated though, since it is not the only tense in Latin that is used to describe things that happened in the past. (The other is the perfect tense, which we will start next week.) The **imperfect tense** is generally used for things that happened over a period of time, that happened periodically, or for actions that weren't finished in the past. Because of this, the best translation for the Latin imperfect tense (e.g., **amābat**) isn't usually the **simple past tense** (I loved), but what we call in English the **past progressive tense** (I was loving). In the Latin present system, both of the other two tenses (present and future) can also be correctly translated into an English progressive form.

The chart below shows the verb **ambulō** with all of the correct translation options. Notice that each Latin tense has both a **simple** form as an English translation option and a **progressive** form as a translation option. In each case, the progressive form consists of a **being** verb (like **am**, **was** or **were**) and the **“-ing”** form of the verb. Additionally, the present form could be translated into an **emphatic** form, which includes the helping verb **do/does/ did**. In each case, the default translation that we prefer is bolded.

Latin word:	ambulat (present tense)	ambulābat (imperfect tense)	ambulābit (future tense)
simple form:	He walks (simple present)	He walked (simple past)	He will walk (simple future)
progressive form:	He is walking (present progressive)	He was walking (past progressive)	He will be walking (future progressive)
emphatic form:	He does walk (present emphatic)		

A. Vocabulary:

1. placeō	to please	9. dexter	right
2. luceō	shine	10. sinister	left
3. referō	report	11. contendō	exert
4. hasta	spear	12. gladius	sword
5. condō	establish	13. scūtum	shield
6. retineō	hold back	14. vertō	turn
7. militō	serve	15. dux	leader
8. castra	camp	16. miles	soldier

B. Chant: Give the present system tense endings.
Remember to label the boxes.

	Present		imperfect		future	
number	S	P	S	P	S	P
1st	o	mus	Bar	amur	bo	bitis
2nd	s	tis	bas	batis	bis	bitis
3rd	t	ant	bat	bant	bit	bunt

C. Grammar:

- Why can the present system tenses also be called the present-future-imperfect system tenses? Because present tenses are used to describe things that are happening now, unlike how the imperfect tense is used to describe things that were happening in the past.
- You find the present stem by dropping the ending off of the Present form of the verb (the second principal part).
- The imperfect tense should be used for things that happened over a period of time, happened periodically or were left unfinished in the past.

Using *imperō* and *placeō* with the dative instead of the accusative

The verbs *imperō* and *placeō* are some of those rare verbs that take an object in the dative case rather than the accusative.

Imperō takes the accusative when referring to an action but the dative when referring to a person:

He orders dinner = *imperat cēnam* (*cēnam* in the accusative.)

He gives orders to the soldier = *imperat militī* (*militī* in the dative)

Study the examples below and note how the dative is used with *imperō* and *placeō*.

DO-acc.

Dux militēs vocat.

The leader calls the soldiers.

IO-dat.

Dux militibus imperat.

The leader orders the soldiers.

DO-acc.

Miles lēgātum videt.

The soldier sees the lieutenant.

IO-dat.

Miles lēgātō placet.

The soldier pleases the lieutenant.

DO-acc.

Magistra discipulum vocat.

The teacher calls the student.

IO-dat.

Magistra discipulō imperat.

The teacher orders the student.

DO-acc.

Discipula magistrā videt.

The student sees the teacher.

IO-dat.

Discipula magistrae placet.

The student pleases the teacher.

Now translate these sentences which feature either *imperō* or *placeō*.

1. Centurio imperat *militibus* et clāmat, "Vertite ad sinistrum!"

2. Dux imperat *lēgātō* et clāmat, "Refer nūntium!"

3. Lēgātus imperat *militī*, "Contende per montēs!"

4. Discipulī bonī *magistrō* placent.

5. Epistula longa *amīcō* placet.

6. Bellum longum *populō* nōn placet.

The sailors threaten the men of the island and build a fort.

1. Magister ad nautās vertit et dicit, "Vultisne" pugnāre?"
 the teacher to sailor and wish fight
 the teacher and the sailor wish to fight

2. "Pugnābimus!", nautae clāmant.
 fight sailors to shout
 The sailors will shout and fight

3. Deinde**, nautae gladiōs, hastās et scūta tollunt (they take up).
 sailor sword spear and shield
 Then the sailors take up their sword spears and shields

4. Magister hastam gravem in litore prō virīs īnsulae iacet.
 teacher sword serious shore in front of men Island
 The teacher's sword lies on the shore in front of the men of the island.

5. Virī īnsulae timent et in silvam currunt.
 men island to fear and to run
 The men of the island are afraid and run to the forest.

6. Magister nautīs imperat, "Pōnite castra*** in hōc litore!"
 teacher sailor command to put camp the shore/beach
 The teacher commands the sailors to put the camp on this shore.

7. Nautae castra fortia pōnunt.
 sailors camp strong to put
 The sailors put up a strong camp.

8. Illa castra magistrō placent.
 that camp the teacher to please
 The teacher likes that camp.



*From the irregular verb, volō, velle, I wish.
 vultis = you wish

** then, next

*** "to pitch/place camp"

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum	
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum + <i>dative object</i>	
condō, condere, condidī, conditum	
lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī	
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum	
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum	
mīlitō, mīlitāre	
castra, -ōrum	
hasta, -ae	
scūtum, -ī	
dexter, dextra, dextrum	
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum	

B. Review Vocabulary:

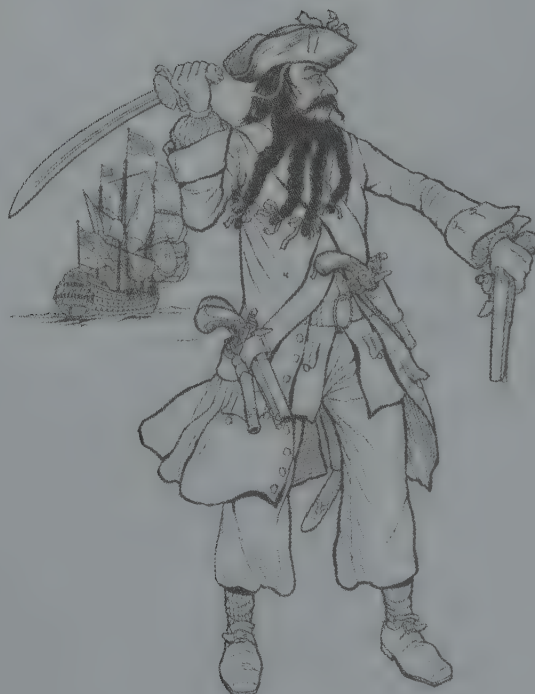
LATIN	ENGLISH
lēgātus, -ī	
gladius, -ī	
dux, ducis (m)	
mīles, mīlitis (m)	
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	
imperō, imperāre (+ <i>dative of person</i> , + <i>acc. of thing</i>)	

C. Chant: Present System Endings

Tense:	Present		Imperfect		Future	
Number:	S	P	S	P	S	P
1 st						
2 nd						
3 rd						

D. Grammar:

1. Why can the present system tenses also be called the present-future-imperfect system tenses?
2. How do you find the present stem?
3. In what situations should you use the imperfect tense?



Chapter 8

Unit 2

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Perfect Tense Verb Endings

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	-ī	-imus
2 nd person	-istī	-istis
3 rd person	-it	-ērunt

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum	to get ready, to bring together, to compare
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum	to defend
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum	to hold back, prohibit <i>prevent</i>
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum	to wound <i>vulnerare</i>
fortūna, -ae	fortune
provincia, -ae	province
inopia, -ae	want, lack <i>in meaning not</i>
summa, -ae	sum, total
tuba, -ae	trumpet <i>brass</i>

*Inter-
judge*

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum	to have, hold
conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum	to bring together, unite <i>Conceal</i>
conservō, conservāre, conservāvī, conservātum	to keep, preserve <i>conserve</i>
iūdex, iūdicis (m)	judge <i>Judicial</i>
potestās, potestātis (f)	power <i>Potential</i>
auctōritās, auctōritātis (f)	influence, authority



Jack Vale
Keny
g. 11/11/12

The Perfect Tense

The perfect tense is generally used to express an action that has been completed by the present time. Its use is (often) very similar to the English **present perfect** tense. For example, if, in English, I wanted to emphasize the fact that I have finished walking, I would say:

I have walked.

In Latin this would be generally translated as:

Ambulāvī.

The meaning here is slightly different from the past tense form that you have been using up to now, the **imperfect**, which tends to refer to events that happened over a period of time or recurred over and over or for actions that were left unfinished. On the other hand, the **perfect** tense tends to be used for things that happened once and were finished before the present time.

Both tenses can be translated with the English **simple past** tense (I walked): the perfect tense can also be translated on occasion with the English **past emphatic** (I *did* walk). Most of the time, it's best to translate the Latin imperfect tense with the English **past progressive** (I was walking) and the Latin perfect tense with the English **present perfect** (I have walked). The chart below gives all three possible translations for both the perfect and imperfect tenses, with the favored one in bold type.

Latin Tense	Imperfect	Perfect
Latin Verb	ambulābam	ambulāvī
Favored English Translation	I was walking (present progressive)	I have walked (present perfect)
Other Possible English Translations	I used to walk I kept walking	I walked (simple past) I did walk (past emphatic)

A. Vocabulary:

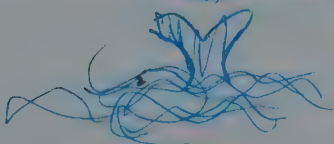
- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|----------------|-----------|
| 1. tuba | trumpet | 9. inopia | Lack |
| 2. summa | sum | 10. comparo | compare |
| 3. vulnero | wound | 11. auctoritas | authority |
| 4. prohibeo | prohibit | 12. conservo | preserve |
| 5. fortuna | fortune | 13. iudex | Judge |
| 6. habeo | hold | 14. potestas | power |
| 7. provincia | province | 15. concilio | unite |
| 8. defendo | defend | | |

B. Chant: Give the perfect tense verb endings. Remember to label the boxes.

	singular	plural
1 st	-i	-imus
2 nd	-isti	-istis
3 rd	-it	-erunt

C. Grammar: Translate the following verbs and then say which tense each is in.

Latin Verb	English Translation	Latin Tense
ambulavi	I have walked	perfect
ambulabat	He walked	imperfect
defendistis	He have defended	perfect
defendebatis	He have defended	imperfect



Rashley

Smith

The perfect tense is formed from the 3rd principal part of a verb—which is always the first person, singular form of the....perfect tense! If you take away the verb ending (which is *i*) you are left with the perfect stem. By adding the perfect endings (*ī, istī, it, imus, istis, ērunt*) you can make the perfect tense. Study the examples below:

1	2	3	4
<u>amō</u>	<u>amāre</u>	<u>amāvī</u>	<u>amātum</u>
↓			
		amāv	
		Perfect Stem	
		→	
		amāvī	amāvimus
		amāvistī	amāvistis
		amāvit	amāvērunt

1	2	3	4
<u>videō</u>	<u>vidēre</u>	<u>vīdī</u>	<u>vīsum</u>
↓			
		vīd	
		Perfect Stem	
		→	
		vīdī	vīdimus
		vīdistī	vīdistis
		vīdit	vīdērunt

Now conjugate the following verbs in the perfect tense (the first is done for you):

stō, stāre, stetī, statum (*stetī, stetistī, stetit, stetimus, stetistis, stetērunt*)

vertō, vertere, vertī, vertum

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum

lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī (*no 4th principal part*)

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum

respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsum

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum

conservō, conservāre, conservāvī, conservātum

1. Magister et nautae māsērunt in castrīs noctem*.
2. Nautae magistrum rogant, “Sumusne incolumēs?”
3. Magister respondit, “Nolite habēre** timōrem. Illa castra fortia sunt, et virilēs sumus.”
4. Nocte***, nautae vocēs aliēnās audīvērunt.
5. Subitō (suddenly), multae sagittae in castra volant.
6. Nautae scūta eōrum tollunt.
7. Ūna sagitta ārdēns (burning) in scūtum magistrī volat.

*accusative of duration of time = through the night

** The negative imperative is formed by using nolite + infinitive
Do not fear = nolite habēre (literally translated – do not wish/want to fear)

*** ablative of time when = at night



A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum	
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum	
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum	
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum	
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum	
conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum	
conservō, conservāre, conservāvī, conservātum	
iūdex, iūdicis (m)	
potestās, potestātis (f)	
auctōritās, auctōritātis (f)	
fortūna, -ae	
provincia, -ae	
inopia, -ae	
summa, -ae	
tuba, -ae	

B. Review Vocabulary:

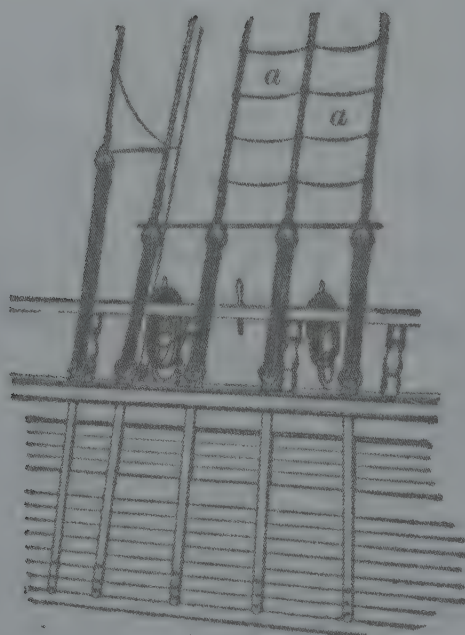
LATIN	ENGLISH
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum	
iūdex, iūdicis (m)	
potestās, potestātis (f)	
auctōritās, auctōritātis (f)	

C. Chant: Perfect Tense Verb Endings

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person		
2 nd person		
3 rd person		

D. Grammar: Translate the following verbs and then say which tense each is in.

Latin Verb	English Translation	Latin Tense
ambulāvistī	you have walked	perfect
conservābās		
habuērunt		
conciliābat		



Ratlines (a, a).

Chapter 9

Unit 2

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Pluperfect Tense Verb Endings

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	-eram	-erāmus
2 nd person	-erās	-erātis
3 rd person	-erat	-erant

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
2 nd Declension masculine	
carrus, -ī	wagon, cart
2 nd Declension neuter	
castellum, -ī	castle, fort
factum, -ī	act, deed
impedimentum, -ī	hindrance
imperātum, -ī	command
maleficium, -ī	evil deed
praesidium, -ī	garrison, protection
spatium, -ī	space
tēlum, -ī	weapon

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
\ miles, mīlitis (c)	soldier <i>military</i>
\ eques, equitis (m)	horseman, knight, equestrian
\ hostis, hostis (c, i)	stranger, foreigner, enemy (of one's country) <i>host</i>
\ mors, mortis (f)	death
\ sanguis, sanguinis (m)	blood



The Pluperfect Tense

The pluperfect tense is generally used for expressing an action that had been completed before some other past action. Its use is very similar to the English “past perfect” tense. For example, if, in English, I wanted to emphasize the fact that I had finished walking before some other past action had occurred, I would say:

I had walked.

In Latin this would be generally translated as:

Ambulāveram.

Fortunately, unlike the other (and more common) tenses you’ve learned before, there aren’t really several options for translating the pluperfect tense; just use the English past perfect tense every time, and you’ll be correct! The chart below summarizes this.

LATIN TENSE	PLUPERFECT
Latin Verb	ambulāveram
Favored English Translation	I had walked (English past perfect tense)

The “Perfect System”

Just as the present, imperfect and future tenses all start with the same stem (the “present stem”), the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect (which we’ll get to next chapter) tenses all start with the “perfect stem.” You find the perfect stem by removing the ending (the “-ī”) from the third principal part. Then you just add whichever perfect, pluperfect or future perfect tense ending to get the right form. The verb tenses which start with the present stem are sometimes called the “present system,” whereas the ones that start with the perfect stem are sometimes called the “perfect system.”

A. Vocabulary:

1. spatium	space	8. impedimentum	hindrance
2. maleficium	evil deed	9. carrus	wagon
3. factum	act deed	10. eques	knight
4. imperātum	Command	11. miles	soldier
5. praesidium	protection	12. mors	death
6. castellum	Castle	13. sanguis	blood
7. tēlum	weapon	14. hostis	stranger

B. Chant: Give the pluperfect tense verb endings. Remember to label the boxes.

	Singular	Plural
1 st	eram	-eramus
2 nd	eras	-eratis
3 rd	erat	-erant

C. Grammar: Translate the following verbs and give their tense.

Latin Verb	English Translation	Latin Tense
ambulāverās	you had walked	pluperfect
conservāvistī	you have kept	perfect +
habuerant		pluperfect +
conciliābimus		perfect +



Study the charts below to see how we form the present and perfect systems of verbs.



ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum

Present System

ambulā

Perfect System

ambulāv

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect	Future perfect
ambulō	ambulābam	ambulābō	ambulāvī	ambulāveram	ambulāverō
ambulās	ambulābās	ambulābis	ambulāvistī	ambulāverās	ambulāveris
ambulat	ambulābat	ambulābit	ambulāvit	ambulāverat	ambulāverit
ambulāmus	ambulābāmus	ambulābimus	ambulāvimus	ambulāverāmus	ambulāverimus
ambulātis	ambulābātis	ambulābitis	ambulāvistis	ambulāverātis	ambulāveritis
ambulant	ambulābant	ambulābunt	ambulāvērunt	ambulāverant	ambulāverint

After having studied the charts above, complete the charts below.

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum

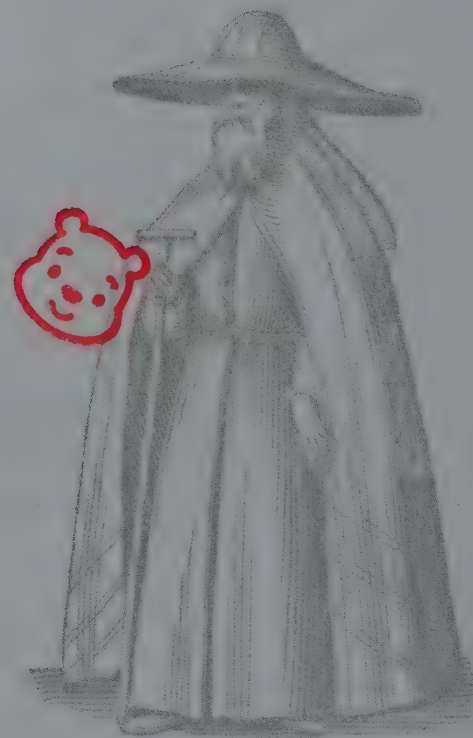
erra

errav

erro	errabam	errabo	erravi	erraveram	erravero
erras	errabis	errabis	erravisti	erraveras	erraveris
errat	errabit	errabit	erravit	erraverat	erraverit
erramus	errabamus	errabimus	erravimus	erraveramus	erraverimus
erratis	errabatis	errabitis	erravistis	erraveratis	erraveritis
errant	errabant	errabunt	erraverunt	erraverant	erraverint

The Trumpet Sounds

1. Ūna nauta aquam iēcerat¹ in flammās.
2. “Sonā² tubam!” magister clāmāvit.
3. Nauta tubam inflāvit.³
4. Post⁴ ille tubam inflāverat, pacem erat.
5. Post⁴ ille tubam inflāverat, sagittae⁵ nōn volāvērunt.
6. Magister nautās conciliāvit. “Cūr hostēs nōn pignant?” illōs rogāvit.
7. “Tuba hostēs terret,” nauta dēclarāvit.



¹ *Iaciō, iacēre, iēcī, iactum*: to throw

² *Sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitum*: to sound, resound, make a noise

³ *Inflō, inflāre, inflāvī, inflātum*: to blow into

⁴ *Post* in these sentences is functioning as an adverb meaning *after*.

⁵ *Sagitta, -ae*: arrow

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
factum, -ī	
praesidium, -ī	
imperātum, -ī	
malefīcium, -ī	
spatium, -ī	
castellum, -ī	
tēlum, -ī	
carrus, -ī	
impedīmentum, -ī	

B. Review Vocabulary:

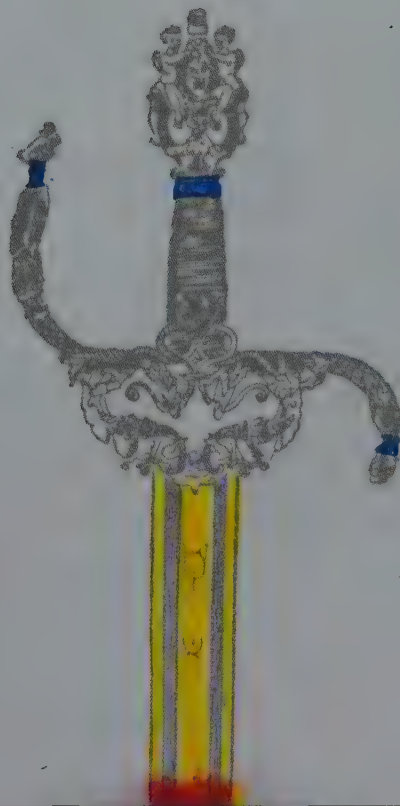
LATIN	ENGLISH
mīles, mīlitis (c)	
eques, equitis (m)	
hostis, hostis (c, i)	
mors, mortis (f)	
sanguis, sanguinis (m)	

C. Chant: Pluperfect Tense Verb Endings

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person		
2 nd person		
3 rd person		

D. Grammar: Translate the following verbs and give their tense.

Latin Verb	English Translation	Latin Tense
ambulāverātis	you (all) had walked	pluperfect
conciliābat		
habuērunt		
conservāveram		



Chapter 10

Unit 2

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Future Perfect Tense Verb Endings

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	-erō	-erimus
2 nd person	-eris	-eritis
3 rd person	-erit	-erint

B. New Vocabulary:



LATIN	ENGLISH
crās	tomorrow
cūr?	why?
diū	for a long time
herī	yesterday
hodiē	today
iam	now, already
interim	meanwhile
male	badly
postea	afterwards
saepe	often
semper	always

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum	to prohibit
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum	to wound
fortūna, -ae	fortune
provincia, -ae	province
inopia, -ae	want, lack

D. Adverbial Antonyms

We can pair several of the adverbs of time in this chapter with their “opposites.” Study the list below.

herī yesterday	hodiē today	crās tomorrow
diū for a long time	paulisper for a little while	
iam now, already	tum, tunc then	
male badly	bene well	
postea afterwards	anteā, ante before	
saepe often	nōnnumquam sometimes	
semper always	numquam never	

E. Write five short sentences in Latin using the adverbs above.
A sample sentence is given for you.

Pater et filius diū labōrāvērunt. *The father and son worked for a long time.*

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

WORKING WITH ADVERBS OF TIME

All is quiet... for a time

1. Nautae et magister diū mānsērunt.
2. “Parāte!” magister inquit. “Paulisper iterum¹ oppugnābunt.”
3. Nautae parāvērunt et iterum diū expectāvērunt, sed virī insulae nōn oppugnāvērunt.
4. Ūnus nauta dīxit, “Hodiē virī nōn oppugnāvērunt. Crās oppugnābunt.”
5. Magister respondit, “Tacē!² Saepe virī ferōcēs currunt cum³ audiunt⁴ sonōs⁵ aliēnōs. Sed mox⁶ reddent.⁷ Igitur, parāte bene.”

¹ iterum: again

² taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum: to be silent

³ cum: when

⁴ audiunt: they hear

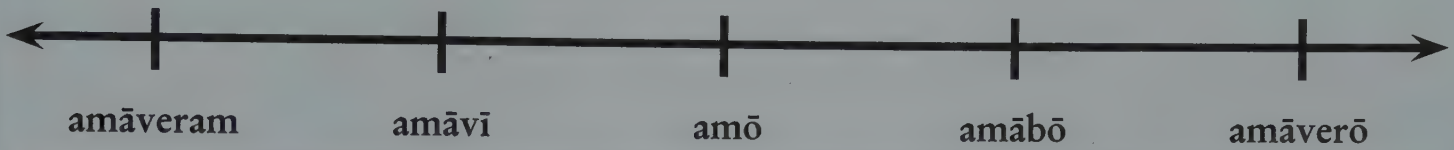
⁵ sonus, -i: sound, noise

⁶ mox: soon

⁷ reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum: to give back, return (reddent is the future form “they will return,” which you will learn in Chapter 14)

Tense Timeline Exercise

Study the timeline below which shows you 5 tenses for **amō**. Then fill out the boxes underneath for each verb "timeline."



Pluperfect	Perfect	Present	Future	Future Perf.
Putaveram	Putavi	putō	Putabo	Putavero
cogitaveram	cogitavi	cogitās	cogitabo	cogitavero
ambulaveram	ambulavi	ambulō	ambulabo	ambulavero
portaveram	portavi	portāmus	portabo	portavero
Navigaveram	Navigavi	nāvigō	Navigabo	Navigavero
oppugnaveram	oppugnavi	oppugnō	oppugnabo	oppugnavero
paraveram	paravi	parō	parabo	paravero
laboraveram	laboravi	labōrō	laborabo	laboravero

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
crās	
cūr?	
diū	
herī	
hodiē	
iam	
interim	
male	
postea	
saepe	
semper	

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum	
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum	
fortūna, -ae	
provincia, -ae	
inopia, -ae	

C. Chant: Future Perfect Tense Verb Endings

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person		
2 nd person		
3 rd person		

D. Grammar: Translate the following verbs and then say which tense each is in.

Latin Verb	English Translation	Latin Tense
ambulāvīstis	you have walked	perfect
amāveris		
dēfendistī		
vulnerāverant		



Chapter 11

Unit 2

REVIEW:

Review of Chapters 7, 8, 9 and 10

After another five weeks of study you have learned another 40 words. Check the boxes of each word you don't know. Then review those words as much as you need to in order to master them. Remember to chant using your eyes, ears and voice.

CHAPTER 7

- ☐ contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum march
- ☐ vertō, vertere, vertī, versum turn
- ☐ placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum please
+ dative object
- ☐ condō, condere, condidī, conditum found
- ☐ lūceō, lūcere, lūxī shine
- ☐ retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentum hold back
- ☐ referō, referre, rettulī, relātum report
- ☐ militō, militāre military
- ☐ castra, -ōrum camp
- ☐ hasta, -ae spear
- ☐ scūtum, -ī shield
- ☐ dexter, dextra, dextrum right
- ☐ sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left

CHAPTER 8

- ☐ comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum compare
- ☐ dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum defend
- ☐ prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum prohibit
- ☐ vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum wound
- ☐ fortūna, -ae fortune
- ☐ provincia, -ae province
- ☐ inopia, -ae want lack
- ☐ summa, -ae sum
- ☐ tuba, -ae trumpet

CHAPTER 9

- ☐ carrus, -ī wagon
- ☐ castellum, -ī castle
- ☐ factum, -ī deed
- ☐ impedimentum, -ī hindrance
- ☐ imperātum, -ī command
- ☐ maleficium, -ī evil deed
- ☐ praesidium, -ī protection
- ☐ spatium, -ī space
- ☐ tēlum, -ī weapon

CHAPTER 10

- ☐ crās tomorrow
- ☐ cūr? why
- ☐ diū long time
- ☐ herī yesterday
- ☐ hodiē today
- ☐ iam already
- ☐ interim meanwhile
- ☐ male badly
- ☐ postea afterwards
- ☐ saepe often
- ☐ semper always



Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 7

contendō

contend, contender, contentious

vertō

advertisement, revert, invert, convert, pervert, introvert, extrovert, ambivert

placeō

placid, placate, placable, implacable, please, pleasant, pleasantry

condō

condiment

lūceō

lucent, Lucifer, translucent, lucid, luciferin

retineō

retain, retention, retentive, retainer, retinue

referō

refer, referral, reference, referee

militō

militate, military, militia, militant

castra

Lancaster

hasta

hastate (shaped like an arrowhead or spearhead)

scūtum

scute, scutellum, scutiform

dexter

dexterous, dexterity, dextral, dexiotropic, ambidextrous

sinister

sinister (beware of those left-handed people!)

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. The Milito Contendo to the castra.
2. They hold hasta and scutum.
3. They verto to refero to the sinister.
4. The dexter tries to retineo them to placeo.
5. Then they were the ones condō the sinister.

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 11	
comparō	compare, comparable, incomparable, comparison
dēfendō	defend, defense, defensible, indefensible, defender
prohibeō	prohibit, prohibitive, prohibition
vulnerō	vulnerable, invulnerable
fortūna	fortune, fortunate, unfortunate, fortuitous
provincia	province, provincial
inopia	no derivatives want
summa	sum, summit, summation, summary
tuba	tuba trumpet

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

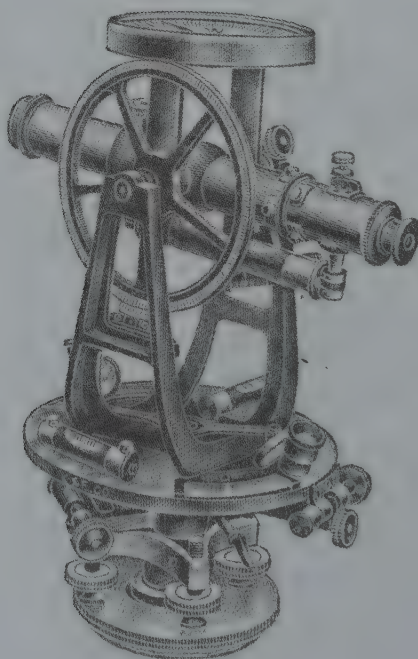
1. They vulnero the provincia.
2. The unfortunate provincia inopia - tubas.
3. They are trying to Summa and comparo people.
4. They will defend their tuba.
5. They must prohibeo trespasser.

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 9

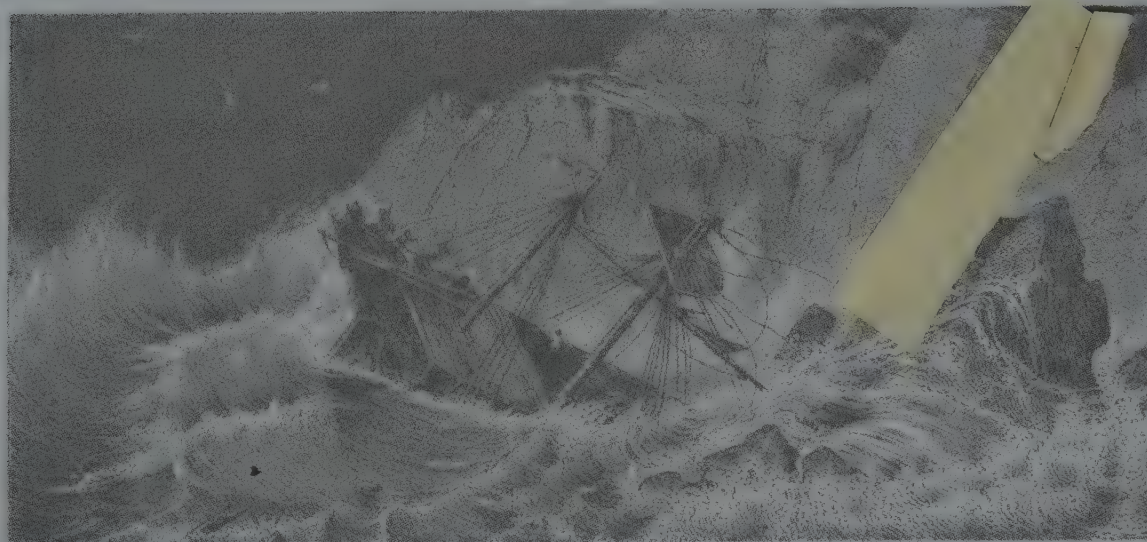
carrus	car, cargo, carry
castellum	castle
factum	fact, factual
impedimentum	impede, impedance, impediment
imperātum	related to Latin words imperātor and imperō
maleficium	related to Latin words malus and faciō
praesidium	presidio
spatium	space, spatial, spacious
tēlum	no derivatives



Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 10	
crās	procrastinate - putting something off till “tomorrow”
cūr?	
diū	related to <i>diēs</i> (day) and <i>diurnus</i> (belonging to the day) in English, diurnal means daily
herī	
hodiē	
iam	
interim	used as an adjective in English. E.g., interim president (president for the time being)
male	related to the Latin word <i>malus</i> (evil, bad)
postea	related to the Latin preposition <i>post</i> (behind, after)
saepe	
semper	used in some well-known phrases: <i>semper fidēlis</i> (always faithful); <i>semper reforanda</i> (always reforming)



Rubra Īnsula

MDCXXXVI

Iam Rogerus Gulielmī et scholae Salem colōniam relīquerant. Terram ab Indigeniīs ēmerant et novam colōniam condiderant. Hanc terram Rubram Īnsulam appellābunt, quod humus est ruber. Ibi omnēs libertātem dē religiōne habēbunt.

Interim Salem Anna Hutchinson etiam doctrinās et traditiōnēs colōniae prōvocāvit. Ea pastōrēs et sermonēs male trādūxit. Anna yēram religiōnem esse “interiōrem lūcem” persōnae sine pastōribus aut praeceptīs dēclārāvit. Iohannes Winthrop et ducēs Annam excommunicāverunt. Ea et scholae etiam ad Rubram Īnsulam movērunt et aliam novam colōniam condidērunt.

Posteā Rogerus ad Britanniam nāvigāvit. Chartam prō novā colōniā suā rogāvit. Ante redībit, Indigenae Annam et familiam necāverint.

Glossary:

Rogerus Gulielmī, m. Roger Williams

schola, -ae, f. school; followers

relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictum, to leave behind, abandon

indigena, -ae, m., f. native

emō, emere, ēmī, emptum, to buy

ruber, rubra, rubrum, adj. red (Rubram Īnsulam = Rhode Island)

religiō, religiōnis, f. religion

Salem, acc. f. = in Salem

Anna Hutchinson, f. Anne Hutchinson

traditiō, traditiōnis, f. tradition

male, adv. badly, wrongly (compare to *malus*)

prōvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, to provoke

pastor, pastōris, m. shepherd; pastor

trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum, to disgrace, dishonor ‘show up’

interior, interius, comparative adj. inner

lūx, lūcis, f. light

excommunicō, āre, āvī, ātum, to excommunicate

charta, -ae, f. charter

suus, -a, -um, adj. his own

Respondē Latīnē:

1. Ubī Rogerus et Anna colōniās condidērunt?
2. Quis Annam excommunicāvit? Cūr?
3. Cūr illum locum ‘Rubram Īnsulam’ appellāmus?

Ubī - where?
Quis - who?
Cūr - why?

Chapter 12

Unit 3

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: audiō, audīre

4 th CONJUGATION	S	P
1st	audiō	audīmus
2nd	audīs	audītis
3rd	audit	audiunt

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
✓ audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum	to hear (I hear the audible sound)
✓ dormiō, dormīre, dormiī/dormīvī, dormitum	to sleep (I sleep in a dormitory)
✓ sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scitum	to know (I know how to ski)
✓ serviō, servīre, serviī/servīvī, servitum (+ dat.)	to serve (Serviō-Serve!) I am a slave to/for you
✓ veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum	to come (I come to Venice)
✓ clāmor, clāmōris (m)	noise, loud shouting (a clamor)
✓ collis, collis (m, i)	hill (a collie on a hill)
✓ hiems, hiemis (f)	winter, stormy weather (he aims for winter)
✓ arbor, arboris (f)	tree (a tree planted in a harbor)
✓ carmen, carminis (n)	song, poem (Carmen writes a song)

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
✓ expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātum	I expect
✓ putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum	I think
✓ probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum	I approve
✓ vīvus, -a, -um	living
✓ mortuus, -a, -um	dead

Using Associations

Each word in this chapter's list come with an association to help you learn the word. For example look at the word *collis*:

*Collis, collis**Hill (a collie on a hill)*

The word *collis* means hill. Imagine a collie (a dog) on top of a tall hill. The next time you read the word *collis*, you should think of a collie on a hill and remember that *collis* means hill!

A note about serviō, servīre

Serviō takes the dative as its object and can literally be rendered "I am a slave for/to..." which means essentially "I serve." Study the examples below:

*Serviō rēgī**I am a slave to the king**I serve the king*

Welcome to the 4th Conjugation!

Now we will be learning the *last* kind of Latin verb—the 4th Conjugation! You will be happy to know that the 4th conjugation is quite easy because it just like the 3rd conjugation with two small changes. First, let's review the 3rd conjugation, by looking at **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**.

3 rd CONJUGATION	S	P
1 st	dūcō	dūcimus
2 nd	dūcis	dūcitis
3 rd	dūcit	dūcunt

Try chanting the endings (which are in italics above): **ō, is, it, imus, itis, unt**. Can you chant it without looking? Make sure you have these endings mastered.

Now let's look at the table for **audiō, audīre, audī, audītum** (I hear). See if you can find the two places where the endings for **audiō** are different than the endings for **dūcō**.

4 th CONJUGATION	S	P
1 st	audiō	audīmus
2 nd	audīs	audītis
3 rd	audit	audiunt

Did you spot the differences? In case you did not, compare the two charts side-by-side to find the two places where the endings are different:

3 rd and 4 th Compared	S	P
1 st	dūcō / audiō <i>IO</i>	dūcimus / audīmus
2 nd	dūcis / audīs	dūcitis / audītis
3 rd	dūcit / audit	dūcunt / audiunt <i>IUNT</i>

Do you see the differences now? There is an extra “i” in **audiō** and an extra “i” in **audiunt**! These are the only two differences. The fourth conjugation is often called an I-stem verb because it has this persistent “i.” Note as well that the “i” is lengthened (to “ī”) in the 2nd person singular and 1st and 2nd person plural forms. Other than that, it is just like the 3rd conjugation in the present tense.

A. Vocabulary:

1. audiō	to hear	9. hiems	winter
2. veniō	I come	10. arbor	tree
3. clāmor	noise	11. putō	to think
4. collis	hill	12. probō	approve
5. carmen	poem	13. mortuus	dead
6. dormiō	sleep	14. vīvus	living
7. sciō	to know	15. exspectō	expect
8. serviō	to serve		

B. Chant: Give the conjugation for **audiō**. Remember to label the boxes.

	S	P
1	audio	audias
2	audis	auditis
3	audit	audiunt

C. Grammar:

The 4th conjugation is called an I-stem verb because it has a persistent "I" in every form.



Directions: Translate, parse and analyze the following sentences. Some of the words will be review, so look them up if you can't remember them. The first one is done for you.

F/S/N N/S/A 3/S/Pr

1. SN-Vt-DO Puella carmen cantat.

Pat D The girl sings a song.



2. _____ Lēgātus collem oppugnat.

3. _____ Ad urbem venīmus.



4. _____ Clāmōrem puerī audiō.

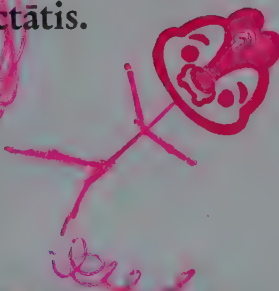


5. _____ Vir sub arbore dormit.
 under tree
 a man sleeps under a tree

N/S/A

6. _____ Fēminae cāmen puellārum audiunt.
 woman sings girls to hear
 woman sings
~~A woman~~
~~the girls sing~~ girls hear

7. _____ Hiemem in urbe expectātis.



Using a verb or noun from the left column, translate the sentence in the right column into Latin. The first example is done for you.

VERBS	ENGLISH TO LATIN
audiō, audīre, audīi/audīvī, audītum	I hear the voice of the poet. Vōcem poētae audiō.
dormiō, dormīre, dormiī/dormīvī, dormītum	The brave soldiers slept on the mountain.
sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītum	We know three men in the city.
serviō, servīre, serviī/servīvī, servītum	The soldier ought to serve the lieutenant.
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum	Caesar said, "I came, I saw, I conquered (vīcī)."
NOUNS	ENGLISH TO LATIN
clāmor, clāmōris	We heard a great noise.
collis, collis	On the hill stood a large wolf.
hiems, hiemis	Winter is coming soon (mox).
arbor, arboris	The boys quickly climbed (ascendērunt) the tree.
carmen, carminis	Vergil wrote a poem about Italy.

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum	hear
dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī/dormiī, dormītum	sleep
sciō, scīre, scīvī/sciī, scītum	To know
serviō, servīre, servīvī/serviī, servītum (+ dat.)	to serve
veniō, venīre, vēmī, ventum	to see
clāmor, clāmōris (m)	Sound
collis, collis (m, i)	hill
hiems, hiemis (f)	winter
arbor, arboris (f)	tree
carmen, carminis (n)	poem

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātum	I expect
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum	think
probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum	to approve
vīvus, -a, -um	living
mortuus, -a, -um	Dead

C. Chant:

4th Conjugation	S	P
1 st	Aud io	Aud ias
2 nd	Aud is	Aud itus
3 rd	Aud it	Aud iunt

D. Grammar:

Why is the 4th conjugation called an "I-stem" verb?

The endings all start with "I"

Chapter 13

Unit 3

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Review Chant: Conjugations 1-4

Conj.:	1 st Conjugation		2 nd Conjugation		3 rd Conjugation		4 th Conjugation	
number:	S	P	S	P	S	P	S	P
1 st	amō	amāmus	videō	vidēmus	dūcō	dūcimus	audiō	audīmus
2 nd	amās	amātis	vidēs	vidētis	dūcis	dūcitis	audīs	audītis
3 rd	amat	amant	videt	vident	dūcit	dūcunt	audit	audiunt

B. New Vocabulary:

	LATIN	ENGLISH
<i>century</i>	centuriō, centuriōnis (m)	centurion (commander of 100 men)
<i>floral</i>	flōs, flōris (m)	flower (flowers in a florist shop)
<i>imperative</i>	imperātor, imperātōris (m)	general, commander; Emperor (emperor--imperātor!)
	legiō, legiōnis (f)	legion (division of the Roman army numbering between 4,200—6,000 men)
	<u>dictātor</u> , dictātōris (m)	dictator (ruler with absolute power)
	custōs, custōdis (c)	guardian, watchman, keeper (custodian)
	obses, obsidis (c)	hostage (the hostage was obsessed)
	pax, pācis (f)	peace, calm, quiet (have peace with chicken pox)
<i>virgin</i>	virgō, virginis (f)	maiden, virgin, girl (Virginia is a virgin)
<i>virtue</i>	virtūs, virtūtis (f)	virtue, manliness, courage (virtūs—virtue!)

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN ENGLISH

iūstus, -a, -um just

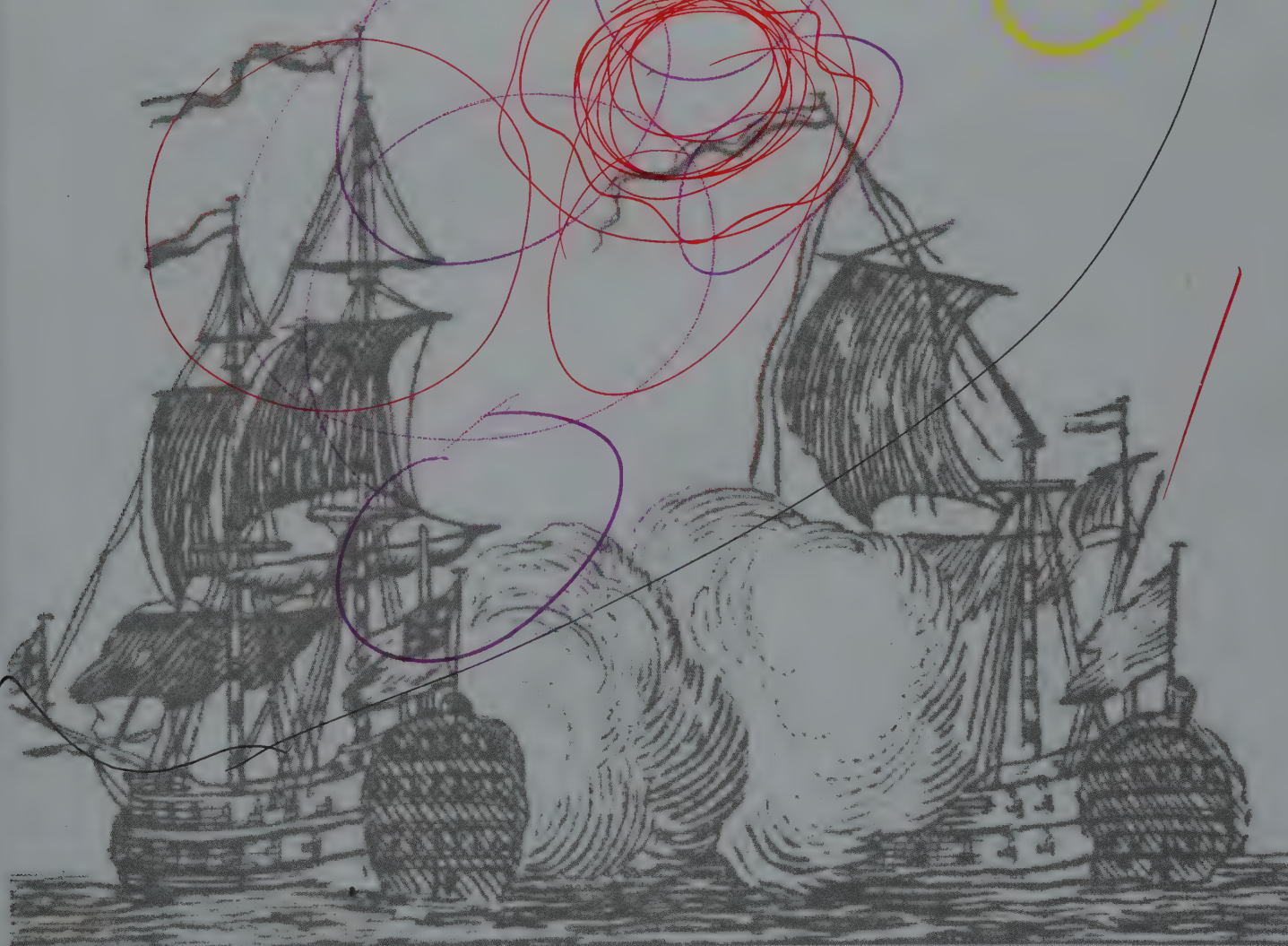
aptus, -a, -um suitable, proper, fitting

aliēnus, -a, -um another's, foreign;
hostile; strange

aequus, -a, -um level, even; fair, favorable

beātus, -a, -um happy, blessed

iūstus
 aptus
 aliēnus
 aequus
 beātus



How to spot a 4th conjugation verb

It is very easy to tell if you have a 4th conjugation verb when you see one in a dictionary or a word list. There will be two signs: 1) the verb will end in “*iō*” (instead of “*ō*”) 2) the infinitive will end in “*īre*” (instead of “*āre*,” “*ēre*,” or “*ere*”). Let’s review the infinitives:

1 st	<i>amō, amāre</i>	<i>-āre</i>	only one with “ <i>ā</i> ”
2 nd	<i>videō, vidēre</i>	<i>-ēre</i>	only one with “ <i>ē</i> ”
3 rd	<i>dūcō, dūcere</i>	<i>-ere</i>	only one with “ <i>e</i> ”
4 th	<i>audiō, audīre</i>	<i>-īre</i>	only one with “ <i>ī</i> ”

So you see, the 4th conjugation is not that hard after all. From now on when you see a verb listed with an “*iō*” and an “*īre*” (like *audiō, audīre*) you will know that it belongs to the 4th (and last) conjugation.



A. Vocabulary:

1. virgō	virgin	9. dictātor	dictator
2. virtūs	manly	10. pax	peace
3. centuriō	centurion	11. aptus	proper
4. custōs	guardian	12. aequus	even
5. flōs	flower	13. beātus	blessed
6. obses	hostage	14. aliēnus	strange
7. imperātor	commander	15. iūstus	just
8. legiō	legion		

B. Chant: Give the conjugations for dūcō and audiō. Remember to label the boxes.

	3 rd conjugation		4 th conjugation	
	S	P	S	P
1 st	duco	ducimus	audio	audimus
2 nd	ducis	ducitis	audis	auditis
3 rd	ducit	ducunt	audit	audiunt

C. Grammar:

What are the two ways that you can spot a 4th conjugation word in the dictionary or a word list?

It will end in "io" or "ire"

Translate, parse (label) and analyze the following sentences. The first is done for you.

M/S/N F/S/Dat 3/S/Pr

1. SN-Vt-DO Imperātor legiōnī imperat.
Pat D *The general commands the legion.*

2. _____ Centuriō nūntium iubet.

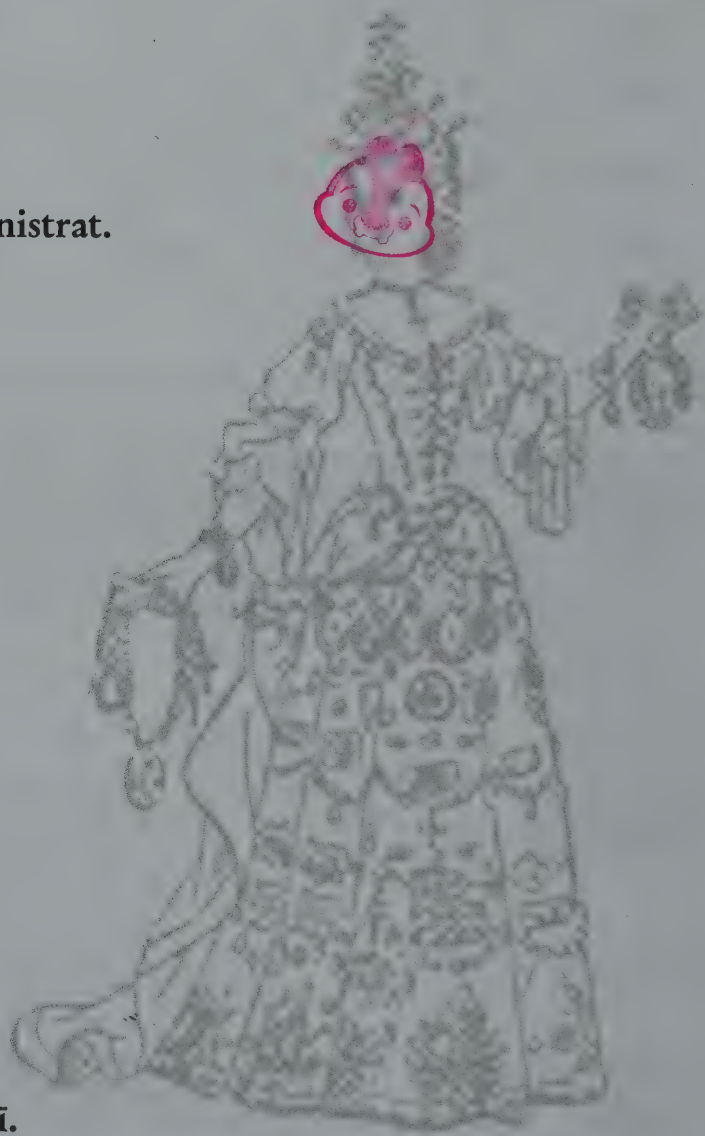
3. _____ Dictātor prōvinciam administrat.

4. _____ Poena iūsta et apta est.

5. _____ Custōs virtūtem tenet.

6. _____ Obses est aliēnus vir.

7. _____ Flōrēs virginis sunt pulchrī.



Chapter 14

Unit 3

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Future of the 3rd and 4th Conjugation

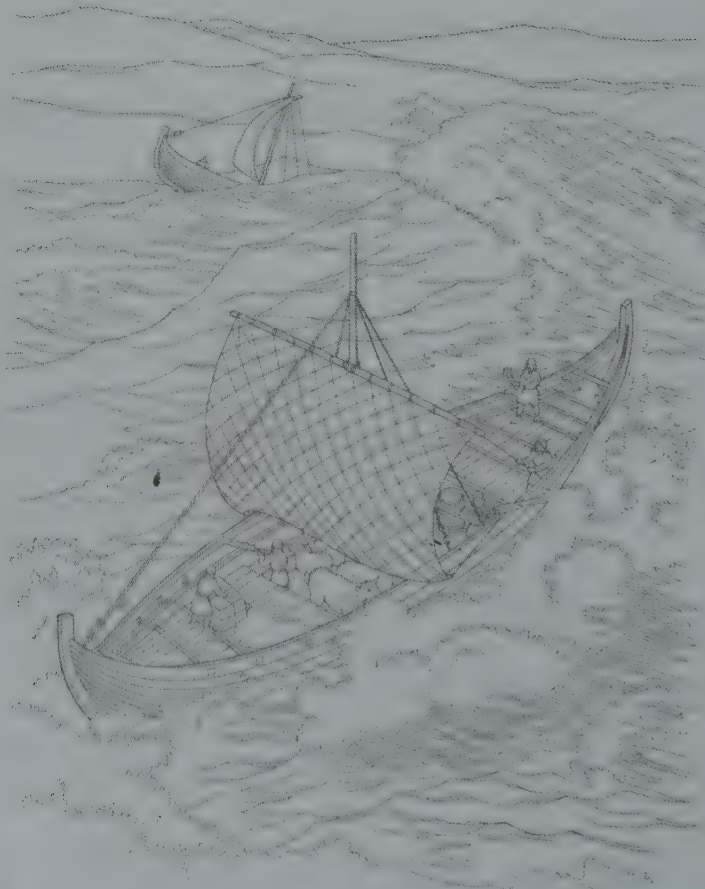
3 rd / 4 th CONJ. FUTURE	S	P
1 st	-am	-ēmus
2 nd	-ēs	-ētis
3 rd	-et	-ent

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum	to come, arrive (advent is coming)
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum	to open, uncover (open a pear) <i>appear</i>
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum	to come together, assemble (come together at the convention)
finiō, finīre, finīi/finīvī, finītum	to limit, restrain, end, finish (finiō-finish!) <i>finish</i>
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīi/mūnīvī, mūnītum	to fortify, protect (fortify the moon) moon
nesciō, nescīre, nescīi/nescīvī, nescītum	to not know (I don't know Nescio)
pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīi/pūnīvī, pūnītum	to punish, avenge (a puny punishment) <i>punish</i>
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum	to find, learn (find a way to repair)
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū	to feel (I feel with the sense of touch) <i>sense</i>

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum	to save, preserve (servants save me work)
cūra, -ae	care
iniūria, -ae <i>injūria, -ae*</i>	injury, injustice
nātūra, -ae	blood relationship, birth; nature
stella, -ae	star



*Ecclesiastical spelling

WELCOME TO THE FUTURE!

This week we will learn how to form the future tense for verbs in the 3rd and 4th conjugation—which you should find quite simple. First, though, let's review the future tense for the 1st and 2nd conjugations. Do you remember the future endings for these conjugations? *bō, bis, bit, bimus, bitis, bunt!*

First, review the future for **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum** (I love).

1 st CONJ. FUTURE	S	P
1 st	amābō (I shall love)	amābimus (we shall love)
2 nd	amābis (you shall love)	amābitis (you shall love)
3 rd	amābit (he shall loves)	amābunt (they shall love)

Now review the future for **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum** (I see)

2 nd CONJ. FUTURE	S	P
1 st	vidēbō (I shall see)	vidēbimus (we shall see)
2 nd	vidēbis (you shall see)	vidēbitis (you shall see)
3 rd	vidēbit (he shall sees)	vidēbunt (they shall see)

Now, let's look at a few sentences that use these forms.

Pater amābit filiam. *The father will love the daughter.*

Frāter et soror amābunt urbem. *The brother and sister (they) will love the city.*

Amābō montem et solem. *I will love the mountain and the sun.*

Amābimus puellam iūstam. *We will love the just girl.*

Adulēscēns nāvem vidēbit. *The youth will see the ship.*

Rēgem vidēbō. *I will see the king.*

Stellam pulchram vidēbimus. *We will see the beautiful star.*

Vir et fēmina vidēbunt montem. *The man and woman will see the mountain.*

Future of the 3rd and 4th Conjugation

Now let's study the future forms for **audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum** (4th conjugation) and **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum** (3rd conjugation). Their forms are almost identical, but not quite. See if you can tell what the difference is between the endings of the 3rd and 4th conjugations.

4 th CONJUGATION	S	P
1 st	<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiēmus</i>
2 nd	<i>audiēs</i>	<i>audiētis</i>
3 rd	<i>audiet</i>	<i>audient</i>

3 rd CONJUGATION	S	P
1 st	<i>dūcam</i>	<i>dūcēmus</i>
2 nd	<i>dūcēs</i>	<i>dūcētis</i>
3 rd	<i>dūcet</i>	<i>dūcent</i>

Did you spot the difference? In case you did not, compare the two charts side-by-side. Now can you tell?

3 rd and 4 th Compared	S	P
1 st	<i>dūcam / audiam</i>	<i>dūcēmus / audiēmus</i>
2 nd	<i>dūcēs / audiēs</i>	<i>dūcētis / audiētis</i>
3 rd	<i>dūcet / audiet</i>	<i>dūcent / audient</i>

Do you see the differences now? The difference is one letter—"i", which remains as part of the stem of all 4th conjugation verbs. This is the only difference! Once again, we see that the 4th conjugation is often called an I-stem conjugation because it has this persistent "i." Other than that, it is just like the 3rd conjugation in the future tense.

Here are some sentences that use the future forms of **dūcō** and **audiō**:

Audiēmus carmen. *We will hear the song.*

Audiētis clāmōrem. *You (plural) will hear the loud noise.*

Audiam mare. *I will hear the sea.*

Note: **mare** is not **marem** in the accusative because it is neuter—and neuter nouns are always the same in the nominative and accusative. Review chapter 10 if you need to.

Pārentēs filiōs ad urbem dūcent. *The parents will lead the sons to the city.*

Note: “ad” means “to.”

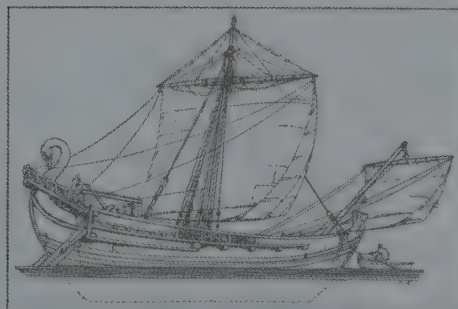
Rēx civēs dūcet. *The king will lead the citizens.*

Gentem dūcam. *I will lead the clan.*

Future of all 4 conjugations compared

Now you know that the 1st and 2nd conjugations share one set of future endings and the 3rd and 4th conjugations share another set of future endings. Here they are for your review:

	1 st and 2 nd Conjugations	3 rd and 4 th Conjugations
1 st	bō	am
2 nd	bis	ēs
3 rd	bit	et
1 st	bimus	ēmus
2 nd	bitis	ētis
3 rd	bunt	ent



A. Vocabulary:

1.	finiō	finish
2.	reperiō	learn
3.	pūniō	punish
4.	mūniō	protect
5.	nesciō	Not to know
6.	sentiō	feel
7.	serviō	preserve
8.	conveniō	assemble

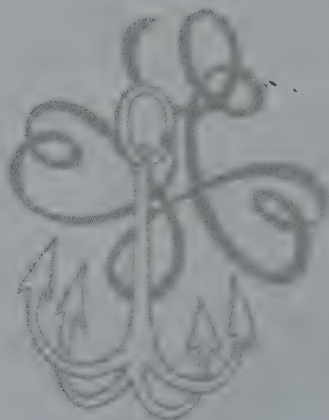
9.	adveniō	arrive
10.	cūra	care
11.	iniūria	injury
12.	aperiō	open
13.	servō	preserve
14.	nātūra	blood
15.	stella	star

B. Chant: Give the 3rd/ 4th conjugation endings. Remember to label the boxes.

	S	P
1	am	emus
2	es	etis
3	et	ent

C. Grammar:

The only difference between the 3rd conjugation and the 4th conjugation in the future tense is that the 4th conjugation has a persistent no -i at the end of the stem.



TRANSLATION WORKSHEET

	1 st Conjugation		2 nd Conjugation		3 rd Conjugation		4 th Conjugation	
1 st	amābō	amābimus	vidēbō	vidēbimus	dūcam	dūcēmus	audiam	audiēmus
2 nd	amābis	amābitis	vidēbis	vidēbitis	dūcēs	dūcētis	audiēs	audiētis
3 rd	amābit	amābunt	vidēbit	vidēbunt	dūcet	dūcent	audiet	audient

Above is a chart that reviews the future forms for all 4 conjugations! This worksheet will help you review all 4. Note that the first 2 conjugations have the *bō, bis, bit, bimus, bitis, bunt* endings, and the second 2 have *am, ēs, et, ēmus, ētis, ent*.

Translate the following sentences to practice both the present and future tenses.

PRESENT	FUTURE
Amō hanc urbem.	Amābō urbem.
Amāmus montēs et solem.	Amābimus nātūram et stellās.
Centuriō advenit cum militibus.	Imperātor adveniet.
Poēta illa carmina cantat.	Incola illam terram amābit.
Vir et fēmina amant filiōs eōrum.	Frāter et soror amābunt casam novam.
Mūnīmus urbem.	Vidēbimus rēgem fortem.
Vidēmus senem clārum.	Iuvenēs lūcem vidēbunt.
Servītis dominō cum cūrā.	Dūcam quīnque militēs ab urbe.
Navēs magnās puerī vident.	Agricola duo animalia dūcet.
Dūcō decem militēs.	Audiam undās maris.
Militēs dūcunt hostēs ad nāvem.	Sentiam undās maris.
Militēs hostēs pūniunt.	Victor clāmōrēs militum audiet.
Audiō clāmōrem virōrum multōrum.	

adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum	I come, arrive (advent)
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum	I open, uncover (aperture)
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum	I come together, assemble (convene, convention, convenient)
fīniō, fīnīre, fīniī/fīnīvī, fīnītum	I limit, restrain, end, finish (final, finally, finale, finish)
mūniō, mūnīre, mūniī/mūnīvī, mūnītum	I fortify, protect (munitions, ammunition, munificent)
nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescīvī, nescītum	I do not know (no derivatives)
pūniō, pūnīre, pūniī/pūnīvī, pūnītum	I punish, avenge (punish, penalty, penal)
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum	I find, learn (repair)
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū	I feel (sense, sensual, sensuous, sentient, sensible)
servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum	I save, preserve (conserve, preserve, observe)

Some of these derivatives may be new to you. Here are the definitions for some of them.

- **Advent:** The coming or arrival of something. The four weeks before Christmas are called advent, when the church celebrates the advent of Christ (the Incarnation).
- **Aperture:** An opening. Cameras have holes called apertures that can be widened or narrowed to allow more or less light into the camera that strikes the film and makes a photograph.
- **Convenient:** When something is convenient it means that it has worked out well and easily—as if things just “came together.”
- **Finale:** Pronounced *fin-NAL-ee*. A finale is the final piece of music in a concert, or the final burst of fireworks at a fireworks display. Often it appears with the work “grand”—the “grand finale”.)
- **Penal:** This word is an adjective meaning “having to do with punishment.” A “penal code” is a set of laws that tell us what kind of punishments will be given for certain crimes.
- **Sentient:** Capable of feelings, especially regarding the sense of touch. Plants are not sentient; animals are sentient.

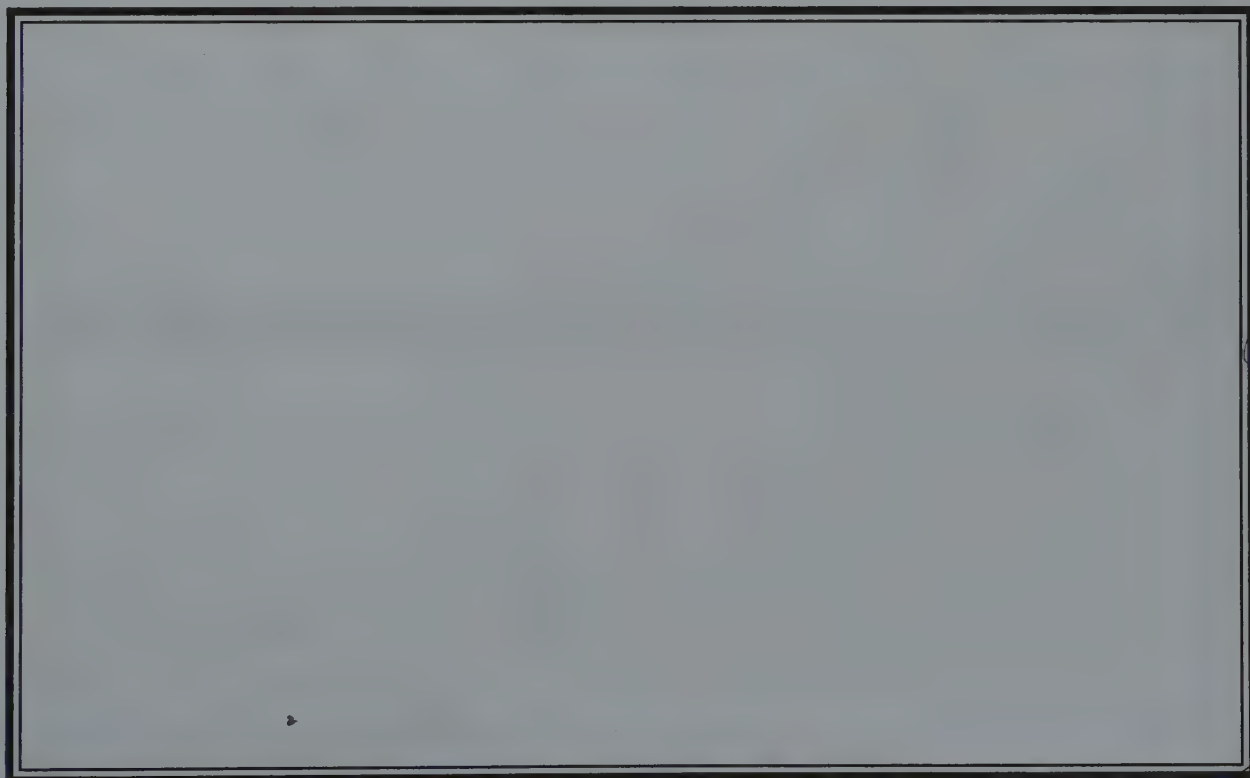
- **Conserve/Preserve:** These two words are synonyms. They mean to keep something or someone safe and sound. To “conserve” energy is to “save” energy. To preserve meat or food means to keep it safe for eating.

Now write a short story using at least 5 derivatives that you have learned. Remember to underline the derivative and put the Latin root word that it came from in parentheses, like this:

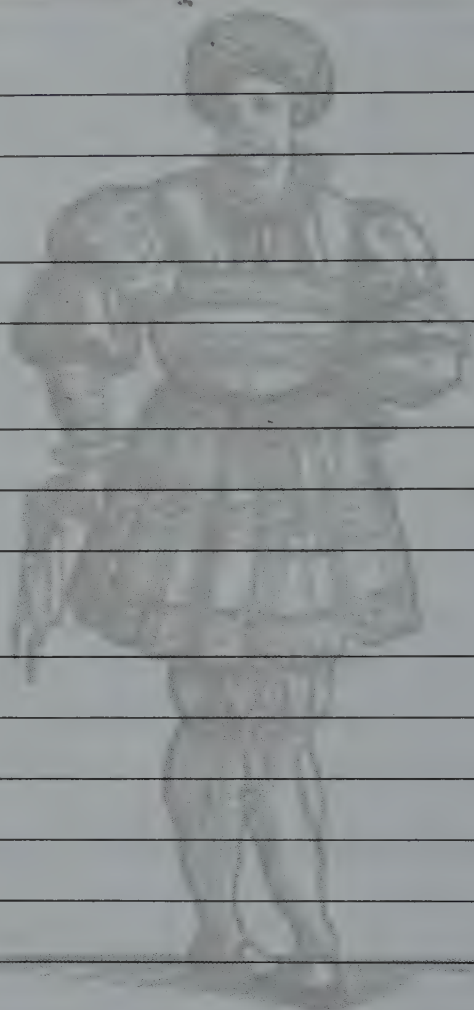
At the end of the concert the band played a loud, long finale (*fīniō*).

Now write your short story below.

If you would like to, draw a picture below that illustrates your story.



A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum	
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum	
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum	
fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītum	
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum	
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum	
pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī, pūnītum	
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum	
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus	
servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum	
cūra, -ae	
iniūria, -ae	
nātūra, -ae	
stella, -ae	

B. Review Vocabulary:

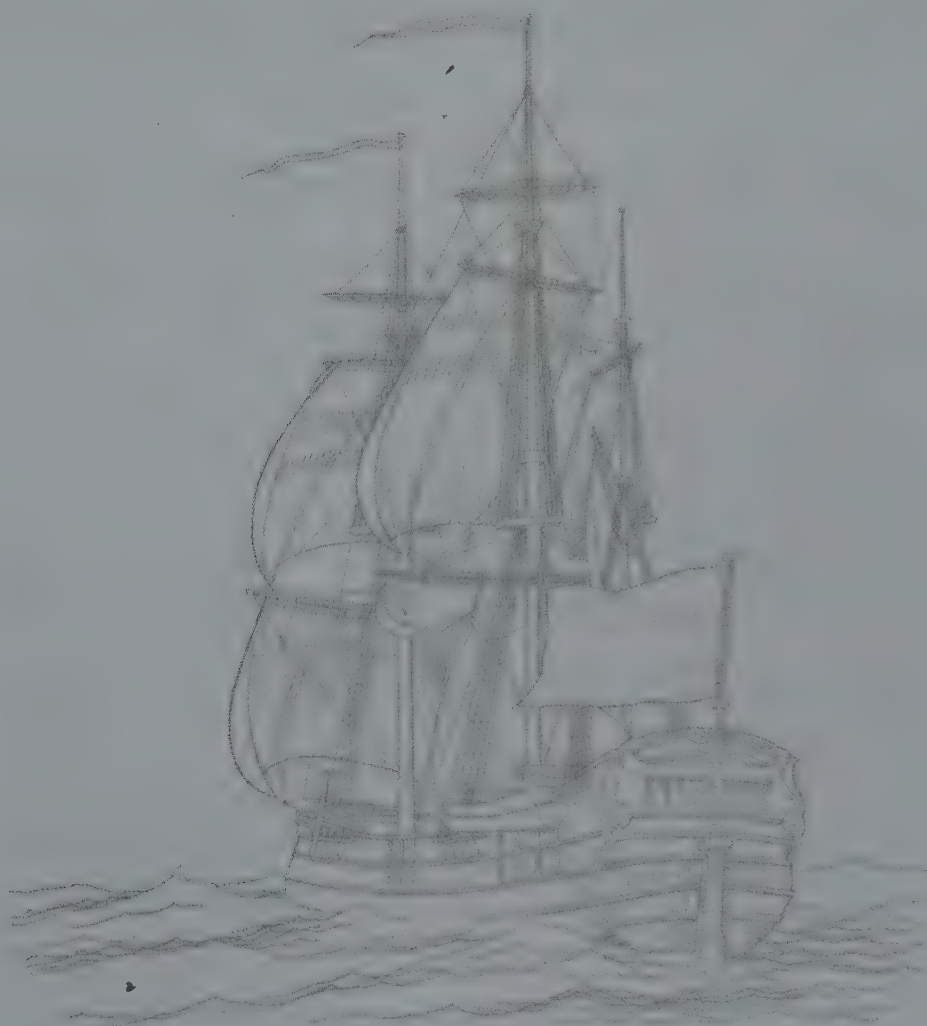
LATIN	ENGLISH
collis, collis (m, i)	
hiems, hiemis (f)	
arbor, arboris (f)	
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum	
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum	

C. Chant: Give the 3rd/4th Conjugation Future Endings

3 rd CONJ. FUTURE	S	P
1st		
2nd		
3rd		

D. Grammar:

What is the difference between the forms of the 3rd and 4th conjugations in the future tense?



Chapter 15

Unit 3

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 3rd Conjugation “-iō” verbs: capiō, capere

3 rd CONJUGATION “IŌ”	S	P
1st	capiō	capimus
2nd	capis	capitis
3rd	capit	capiunt

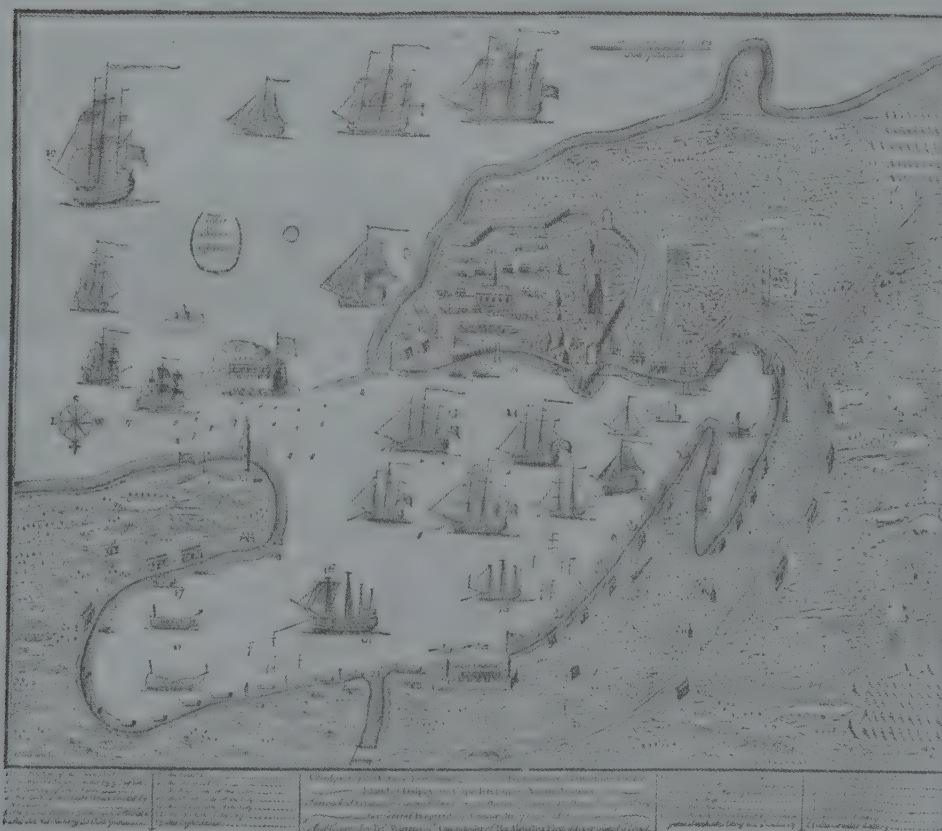
B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum	to take, seize <i>captive</i>
conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectum	to make, construct; accomplish; finish off
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī/cupīi, cupītum	to wish, be eager for, desire
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum	to snatch away
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum	to make, do
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactum*	to throw
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum	to begin, start
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum	to bring to an end, complete <i>perfect</i>
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum	to seize and carry off, snatch
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum	to keep back, keep in reserve, take back; retake, reoccupy (military)

* Ecclesiastical spelling

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātum	to ask or question
agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātum	to drive, stir up, agitate
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum (+ dat.)	to order or command; give orders (with acc. of thing and dat. of person)
studium, -ī	zeal, study
vīnum, -ī	wine



3rd Conjugation “iō” verbs

In this chapter we have one last kind of verb to discuss. These are generally called “3rd conjugation iō” verbs and they’re not so much a completely unique type of verb as a combination of two different types that you’ve already studied. That is, 3rd “iō” verbs sometimes act like 3rd conjugation verbs and sometimes like 4th conjugation verbs. Notice how the first two principal parts make this immediately obvious. The *capiō* looks like a 4th conjugation verb, whereas the *capere* looks like a 3rd conjugation verb. In much the same way, the present tense forms retain the “-i” in the first person singular and 3rd person plural, whereas the forms which would have a long “i” in the 4th conjugation have short “i”s in the 3rd “iō” conjugation. When it comes to the future and imperfect forms, the 3rd “iō” verbs retain the “i,” just like the 4th conjugation. There now, you see, all you have to do is see a 3rd “iō” verb as being half 3rd and half 4th and it all comes together! Study the chart on the next page that shows how 3rd “iō” verbs borrow elements of both 3rd and 4th conjugation verbs.

More Compound Verbs

We’ve had some “compound verbs” before, verbs which are formed by combining the base verb with a **prefix** (which is often a preposition). That is true of several of the verbs in this week’s word list. Notice how the “a” changes to an “i” in each case (*facere* becomes *ficere* in *con-ficere*).

facere (make, do, carry)	capere (take, seize)	rapere (seize, snatch, tear away)
con-ficere: (make together... or finish)	in-cipere: (take in hand... or begin)	ē-ripere: (seize out... or snatch away)
per-ficere: (carry through... or finish)	re-cipere: (re-take... or hold back)	

Comparison Chart of 3rd, 3rd “iō” and 4th Conjugations

Arrows show how forms are “borrowed” from either the 3rd or 4th conjugation to create the 3rd “iō” conjugation. Note that more forms are borrowed from the 4th conjugation, which is why some people regard the 3rd “iō” as just a slightly different version of the 4th conjugation.

regō (3 rd Conj.)		capiō (3 rd “iō” Conj.)		audiō (4 th Conj.)
regere	→	capere		audire
rēxī	→	cēpī	←	audīvī
rēctum	→	captum		audītum
Present (see how the persistent “i” comes from <i>audiō</i>)				
regō		capiō	←	audiō
regis	→	capis		audis
regit	→	capit	←	audit
regimus	→	capimus		audīmus
regitis	→	capitis		audītis
regunt		capiunt	←	audiunt
Future				
regam		capiam	←	audiam
regēs		capīēs	←	audiēs
reget		capiet	←	audiet
regēmus		capīēmus	←	audiēmus
regētis		capīētis	←	audiētis
regent		capient	←	audient
Imperfect				
regēbam		capīēbam	←	audiēbam
regēbās		capīēbās	←	audiēbās
regēbat		capīēbat	←	audiēbat
regēbāmus		capīēbāmus	←	audiēbāmus
regēbātis		capīēbātis	←	audiēbātis
regēbant		capīēbant	←	audiēbant
Imperative				
rege	→	cape		audi
regite	→	capite		audite

A. Vocabulary:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. cupiō | 9. rapuit |
| 2. ēripis | 10. recipiō |
| 3. capiēmus | 11. interrogābunt |
| 4. faciēbātis | 12. vīnum |
| 5. iaciunt | 13. agitāt |
| 6. conficiō | 14. imperābam |
| 7. incipiētis | 15. studium |
| 8. perficiēbant | |

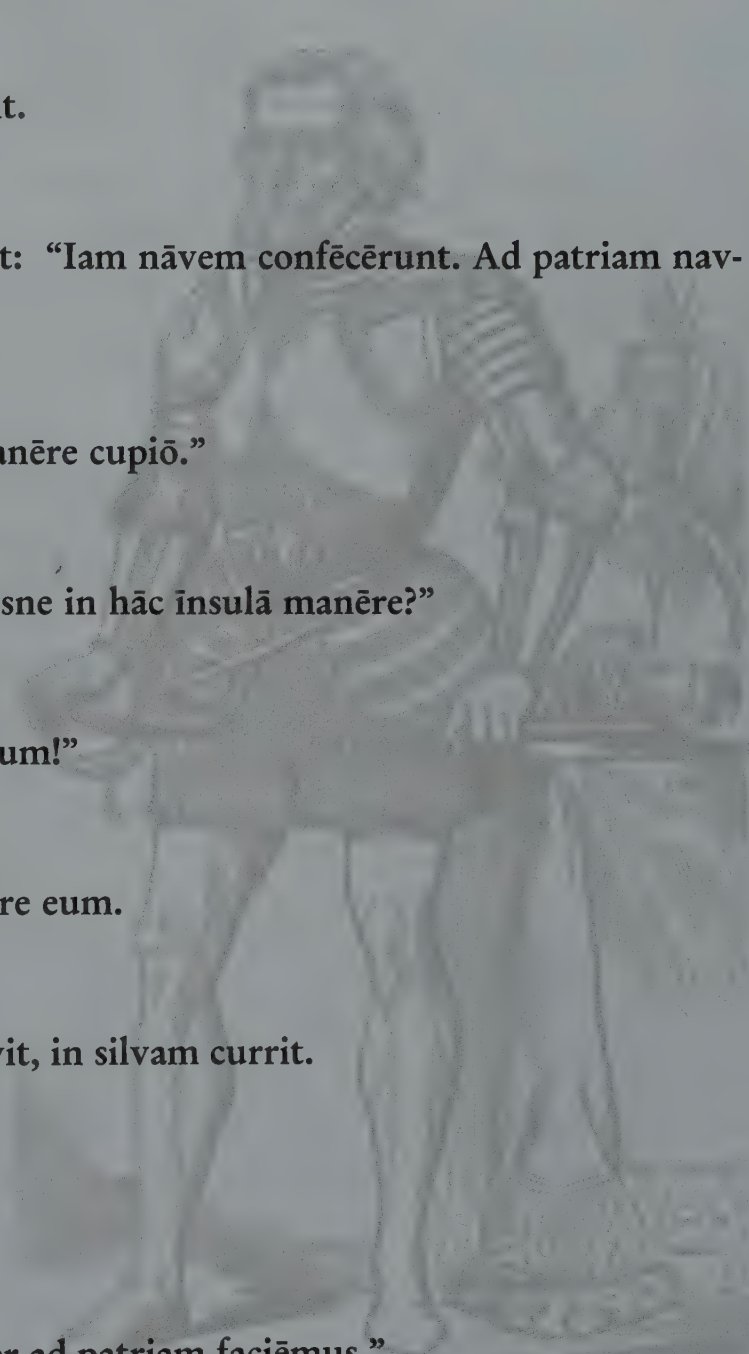
B. Chant: Give the present tense forms of **capiō**. Remember to label the boxes.

C. Grammar:

- How are 3rd "iō" verbs like 3rd conjugation verbs?
- How are 3rd "iō" verbs like 4th conjugation verbs?
- Name 2 verbs from this week's list that are compound verbs and show which part of the verb is a prefix and which is the original verb base/root.

Latin Compound				
Prefix				

One of the sailors wishes to stay on the island

1. Diū nautae conficere nāvem labōrant.
 2. Illi nāvem novam et parvam fēcērunt.
 3. Magister cōram mīlitibus stat et dīcit: “Iam nāvem confēcērunt. Ad patriam navigāre possumus.”
 4. Ūna nauta clāmat, “In hāc īnsulā manēre cupiō.”
 5. “Quid?” magister interrogat. “Cūpisne in hāc īnsulā manēre?”
 6. Magister mīlitibus imperat: “Cape eum!”
 7. Militēs nōn possunt (are able) recipere eum.
 8. Vir quī (who) īn īnsulā manēre cupīvit, in silvam currit.
 9. Militēs hastās iaciunt, sed vir abest.
 10. “Iste redīre nōn audēbit; iam nōs iter ad patriam faciēmus.”
- 

More on Compound Verbs

Here are some more compound verbs that derive from *faciō, facere*.

facere (make, do, carry)
a-fficere <i>carry out... or affect</i>
re-ficere <i>re-make... or repair</i>
e-fficere <i>carry out... or effect</i>

There are numerous other prefixes that can be used with Latin verbs. Here's a list of a few, along with what way they change the meaning of the original verb:

Prefix	con-	per-	dis-	circum
Meaning	either "together" or strengthens the meaning	either "through" or an idea of "completeness"	in different directions	around
Prefix	ad- (frequently reduced to a-)	ab- (frequently reduced to a- or au-)	ex- (or e-)	in-
Meaning	toward or at	away from	out or out-side of	in or into

Using these prefixes, see how many compound verbs you can find. (Hint: look in your Latin dictionary under the prefix you want to check out.) Be sure to list what the prefix and the original verb are.

Latin Compound				
Prefix				
Meaning				

Latin Compound				
Prefix				
Meaning				

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum	
conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectum	
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupitum	
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum	
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum	
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum	
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum	
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum	
raziō, rapere, rapuī, raptum	
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum	

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātum	
agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātum	
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum (+ dat.)	
studium, -ī	
vīnum, -ī	
interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātum	
agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātum	



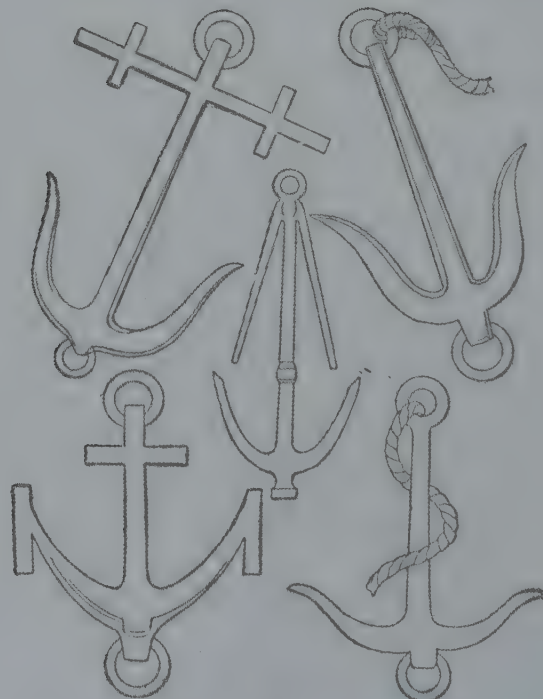
C. Chant: 3rd Conjugation “-iō” verbs: capiō, capere

3 rd CONJUGATION “IŌ”	S	P
1 st		
2 nd		
3 rd		

D. Grammar:

- How are 3rd “iō” verbs like 3rd conjugation verbs?
- How are 3rd “iō” verbs like 4th conjugation verbs?
- Name 2 verbs from this week’s list that are compound verbs and show which part of the verb is a prefix and which is the original root.

Latin Compound				
Prefix				



Chapter 16

Unit 3

REVIEW:

Review of Chapters 12, 13, 14 and 15

After another four weeks of study you have learned another 40 words. Check the boxes of each word you don't know. Then review those words as much as you need to in order to master them. Remember to chant using your eyes, ears and voice.

CHAPTER 12

- ☐ audiō, audīre, audiī/audīvī, audītum _____
- ☐ dormiō, dormīre, dormiī/dormīvī, dormītum _____
- ☐ sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītum _____
- ☐ serviō, servīre, serviī/servīvī, servītum _____
- ☐ veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum _____
- ☐ clāmor, clāmōris (m) _____
- ☐ collis, collis (m, i) _____
- ☐ hiems, hiemis (f) _____
- ☐ arbor, arboris (f) _____
- ☐ carmen, carminis (n) _____

CHAPTER 13

- ☐ centuriō, centuriōnis (m) _____
- ☐ flōs, flōris (m) _____
- ☐ imperātor, imperātōris (m) _____
- ☐ legiō, legiōnis (f) _____
- ☐ dictātor, dictātōris (m) _____
- ☐ custōs, custōdis (c) _____
- ☐ obses, obsidis (c) _____
- ☐ pax, pācis (f) _____
- ☐ virgō, virginis (f) _____
- ☐ virtūs, virtūtis (f) *

CHAPTER 14

- ☐ adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum _____
- ☐ aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum _____
- ☐ conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum _____
- ☐ finiō, finīre, finīi/finīvī, finītum _____
- ☐ mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīi/mūnivī, mūnītum _____
- ☐ nesciō, nescīre, nescīi/nescīvī, nescītum _____
- ☐ pūniō, pūnīre, pūnivī/pūniī, pūnītum _____
- ☐ reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum _____
- ☐ sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsum _____
- ☐ serviō, servīre, serviī, servītum (+ dat.) _____

CHAPTER 15

- ☐ capiō, capere, cēpī, captum _____
- ☐ conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectum _____
- ☐ cupiō, cupere, cupīi/cupīvī, cupītum _____
- ☐ ēripiō, ēripere, eripuī, ereptum _____
- ☐ faciō, facere, fēcī, factum _____
- ☐ iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum _____
jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactum* _____
- ☐ incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum _____
- ☐ perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum _____
- ☐ rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum _____
- ☐ recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum _____

* Ecclesiastical spelling



Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 12	
audiō	audio, audible, inaudible, auditory, auditorium, audition, audience
dormiō	dormitory, dormant, dormition
sciō	science--a way of coming to know things, omniscience, prescient (knowing before), omniscient
serviō	service, servile*, servitude, servant, serf**, subservient***
veniō	intervene, convene, convention, convenient
clāmor	clamor, clamorous
collis	no derivatives
hiems	hiemal (of or relating to winter)
arbor	arbor, arboretum, Arbor Day, Ann Arbor, arboreal (tree-dwelling)
carmen	no derivatives

* **Servile:** characteristic of, or describing a slave. Some who is servile is enslaved to someone (or something) or acting like it.

** **Serf:** a person (especially in the middle ages) who worked on some else's land as a poor farmer who had to do almost anything the landowner wished him to do.

*** **Subservient:** To serve another person's wishes. To be subservient to your teacher means to be under his authority and obedient to his or her wishes.

Write 3 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 13	
centuriō	centurion
flōs	flower, floral, florid
imperātor	emperor, imperious
legiō	legion, legionary
dictātor	dictator, dictatorial, dictate
custōs	custodian, custodial
obses	no derivatives
pax	pacify, Pacific Ocean, pacification, pacifier, pacifist
virgō	virgin, Virginia, virginal

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 14	
adveniō	advent, adventure, adventuresome, adventurous
aperiō	aperture
conveniō	convene, convention, convenient, inconvenient
finiō	finish, final, finale, finally
mūniō	munitions
nesciō	no derivatives
pūniō	punish, punitive, punishment, penal, penalty
reperiō	repair, reparation
sentiō	sense, sentient, sentiment, sentimental

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The brave sailors had come to the island.
2. All the men heard strange voices.
3. The captain did not know the name of the island.
4. The sailors will come together and talk.
5. The sailors were not sleeping.

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 15	
capiō	capture, captivate, captive, captivity
conficiō	confectionery
cupiō	cupid, concupiscence, cupidity
ēripiō	no derivatives
faciō	factory, efficacious, facient, fact, factitious, factious
iaciō jaciō*	no derivatives
incipiō	incipient, incipience
perficiō	perfect, perfection, perfectly
raziō	rape, rapture, rapid, rap, rapine, rapt
recipiō	receive, receipt, recipient, reception, receptionist

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The soldiers captured the enemies.
2. One hostage snatched a sword and stood.
3. The other soldiers seized the hostage and restrained him.
4. All the men had desired to go to the fatherland.

* Ecclesiastical spelling

Chapter 17

Unit 4

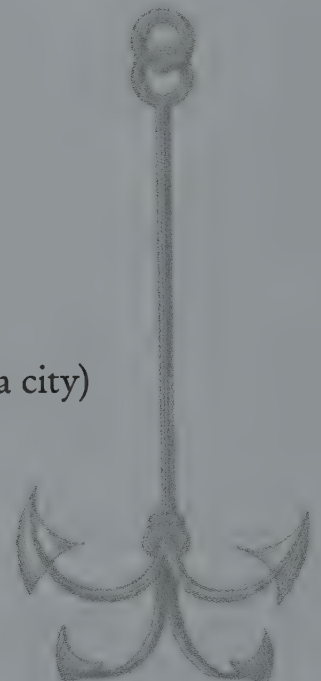
MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	possum (I am able)	possumus (we are able)
2 nd person	potes (you are able)	potestis (you all are able)
3 rd person	potest (he, she, it is able)	possunt (they are able)

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
custodiō, custodire, custodii/custodivī, custoditum	to guard <i>custody</i>
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum	to carry, wear (bellum gerere - to wage war)
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum	to raise, lift
foedus, foederis (n)	alliance, league
sonus, -ī (m)	sound, noise
statua, -ae (f)	statue
moenia, -ium (n. pl.)	walls or fortifications (of a city)
canis, -is (m)	dog <i>canine</i>
edō, edere/esse, ēdī, ēsum	to eat
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum	to do, drive



C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
cūra, -ae	care
culpa, -ae	fault, blame, sin
rīpa, -ae	river bank
somnus, -ī	sleep
angulus, -ī	corner, angle
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum	I carry



Infinitives:

Do you remember what the “**infinitive**” is? It is the 2nd form (or principal part) of the verb as listed in your word list. It is the one that is usually best translated into English with the word “to” in front of it. Thus, **amāre** means “to love,” and **dēbere** means “to owe.” There are several different ways that infinitives are used in Latin, but we are going to learn about one of the most common this week. Certain verbs often work together with other verbs in the infinitive form of that verb to complete the meaning in the sentence. These are called **complementary infinitives**. These infinitives are called complementary because they **complete** the action/meaning of the main verb. Here are some examples that you worked with last year:

Agricola dēbet arāre agrum. *The farmer ought to plow the field.*

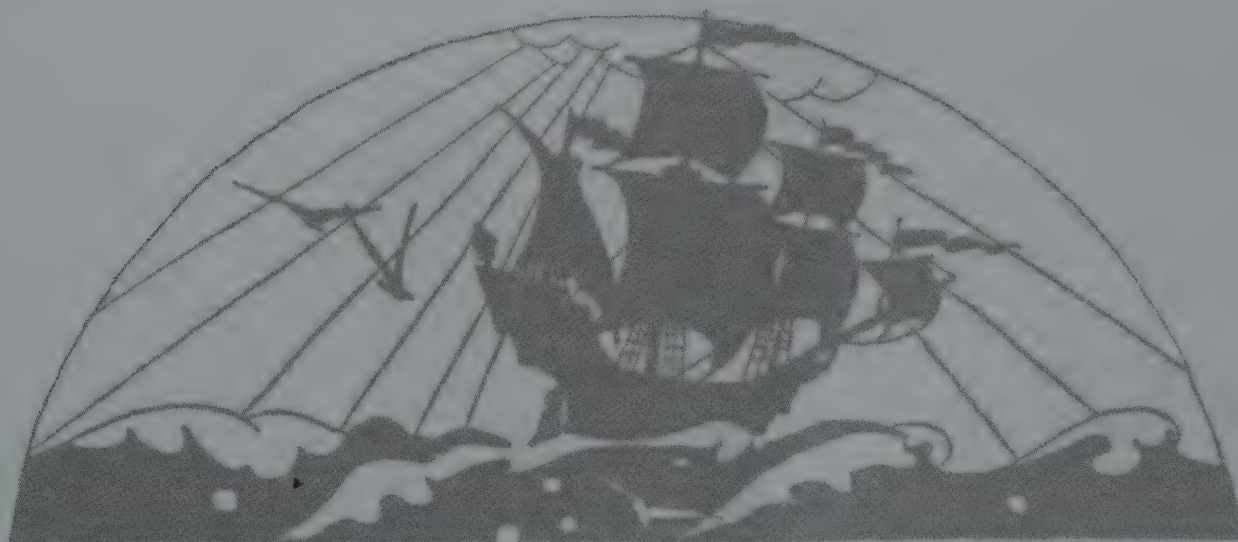
Dux audet currere in periculum. *The leader dares to run into danger.*

Note that the noun **agrum** is actually the **object of the infinitive**, rather than of the sentence’s main verb.

This week’s chant, **possum, posse**, happens to be not only a very common irregular verb, but also a verb that is frequently used with complementary infinitives. For example, here are the two sentences above with **possum, posse** substituted for the main verb:

Agricola agrum arāre potest. *The farmer is able to plow the field.*

Dux bonus currere in periculum potest. *A good leader is able to run into danger.*



Interrogative sentences:

The term “interrogative” derives from the Latin *interrogāre* meaning “to ask,” which is also closely related to the Latin word *rogāre*, which you’ve had before. Can you think of how we ask questions in English? We usually put a helping verb at the beginning of the sentence, and then add a question mark. Consider the examples below:

The farmer plows the field.
becomes
Is the farmer plowing his field?
or
Does the farmer plow his field?

In Latin something similar happens, except that instead of a helping verb being moved to the beginning of the sentence, the whole verb is moved to the beginning of the sentence and then one more thing happens: the suffix “*ne*” is added to the end of the verb (does not have to be a verb) when the question expects the answer ‘yes’ or ‘no’. Thus,

Agricola agrum arat.
becomes
Aratne agricola agrum?

When you parse a question in Latin, you can use all of the same abbreviations that you are familiar with, only use the abbreviation “**Int**” (for interrogative sentence) instead of “**D**” (for declarative sentence) or “**Imp**” (for imperative sentence), just like in the example below:

V-t SN DO
SN V-T Aratne agricola agrum? Int
DO PatD *Does the farmer plow the field?*

SN DO V-t
SN V-T Agricola agrum arat. D
DO PatD

V-t DO
SN V-T Arā agrum. Imp
DO PatD

A. Vocabulary:

1. custodiō

9. edō

2. gerō

10. agō

3. tollō

11. angulus

4. foedus

12. culpa

5. sonus

13. somnus

6. statua

14. rīpa

7. moenia

15. cūra

8. canis

B. Chant: Give the present tense conjugation for possum. Remember to label the boxes.

C. Grammar:

1. The infinitive of a verb should be translated with the word _____.

2. The suffix _____ is generally added to the verb and it is moved to the front of a sentence to make an _____ sentence (or question).



A sailor pledges to find his lost comrade.

1. Magister nautās vocāvit. “Venīte, virī!” ille clāmāvit. Nautae ad eum celeriter vēnērunt.
2. Quis* invenīre comitem perditum** potest?
3. Ūnus nauta cōram magistrō stetit. “Invenīre comitem meum possum,” inquit.
4. Magister illum interrogāvit, “Potesne invenīre eum?” Ille respondet, “Possum.”
5. Magister nautīs dixit: “Invenīre comitem nostrum debēmus. Hic nauta in silvam ibit et spectābit.
6. Omnēs nautae hastās suās*** sustulērunt et clāmāvērunt.
Sonus vōcum eōrum magnus erat.

* quis: who

** perditus, perdita, perditum: lost

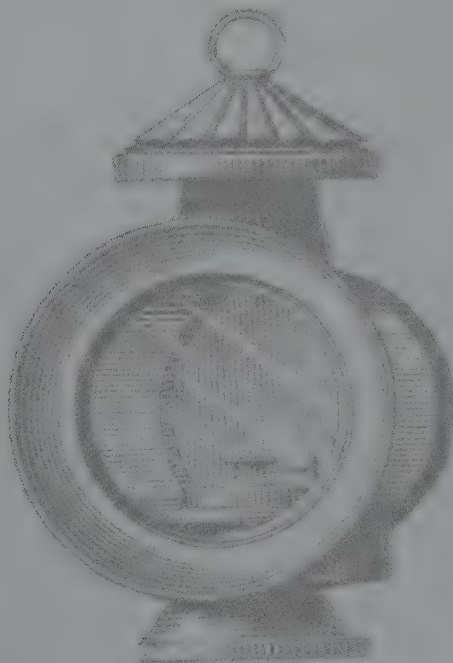
*** from suus, sua, suum/his own, their own

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: review and full conjugation

This week we learned the irregular verb **possum, posse**. Let's review another that we learned last year, **ferō, ferre**. As you may recall, it means "to carry," and it is also one of the more common verbs in the Latin language. In the present system tenses, its conjugation goes like so:

	PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
1 st person	ferō	ferimus	ferēbam	ferēbāmus	feram	ferēmus
2 nd person	fers	fertis	ferēbās	ferēbātis	ferēs	ferētis
3 rd person	fert	ferunt	ferēbat	ferēbant	feret	ferent

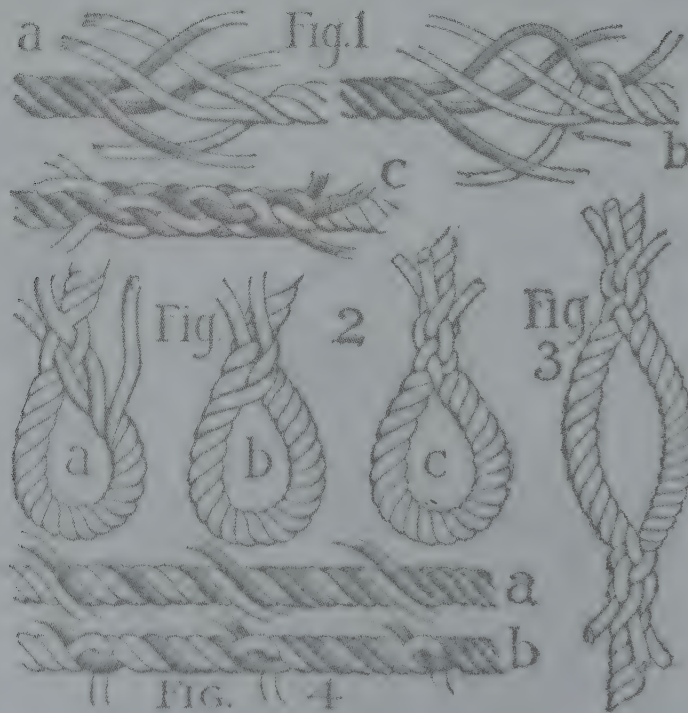
You might have caught that one part of this conjugation is actually new: the future tense. We left this tense out last year because we hadn't covered the 3rd conjugation yet, which **ferō** actually follows for the most part. But now that you're used to the 3rd conjugation, you can see that it is just like a regular 3rd conjugation verb in this respect.



The perfect tenses of *ferō, ferre*:

Note also that the principal parts are actually *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*. This means that in the perfect tenses, it has a completely different stem; otherwise it follows all of the normal perfect system forms. (e.g., in the perfect it's "*tulī, tulistī, tulit...*") With that in mind, try conjugating it in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses.

	PERFECT		PLUPERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
1 st person	<i>tulī</i>		<i>tuleram</i>		<i>tulerō</i>	
2 nd person						
3 rd person						



A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum	
custōdiō, custōdire custōdivī/custōdiī, custōditum	
edō, edere/esse, ēdī, ēsum	
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum	
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum	
canis, canis (c)	
foedus, foederis (n)	
moenia, moenium (n. pl.)	
sonus, ī	
statua, -ae	

B. Review Vocabulary:

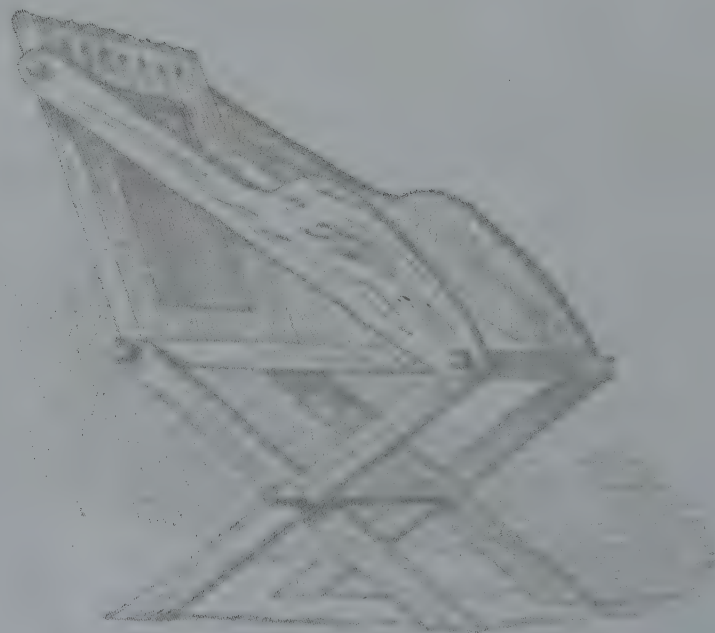
LATIN	ENGLISH
cūra, -ae	
culpa, -ae	
rīpa, -ae	
somnus, -ī	
angulus, -ī	
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum	
cūra, -ae	
culpa, -ae	
angulus, -ī	
somnus, -ī	
rīpa, -ae	

C. Chant: Possum

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person		
2 nd person		
3 rd person		

D. Grammar:

1. How should the infinitive of a verb be translated?
2. What type of sentence asks a question?
3. What is the normal way to make a sentence into a question in Latin?
4. What is a complementary infinitive?



Chapter 18

Unit 4

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: "The Re, Te, Ne Song" (To the tune of "Do, Re, Mi")

Let's start at the very ending, a very strange place to start
 When you sing you begin with "Do, Re, Mi"
 But Latin verbs can end with "Re, Te, Ne"
 These three endings just happen to say: "Re, Te, Ne"...

"Re" the infinitive form of a verb
 "Te" means "you all do it now"
 "Ne" means a question's coming soon
 If you get them right please take a bow!

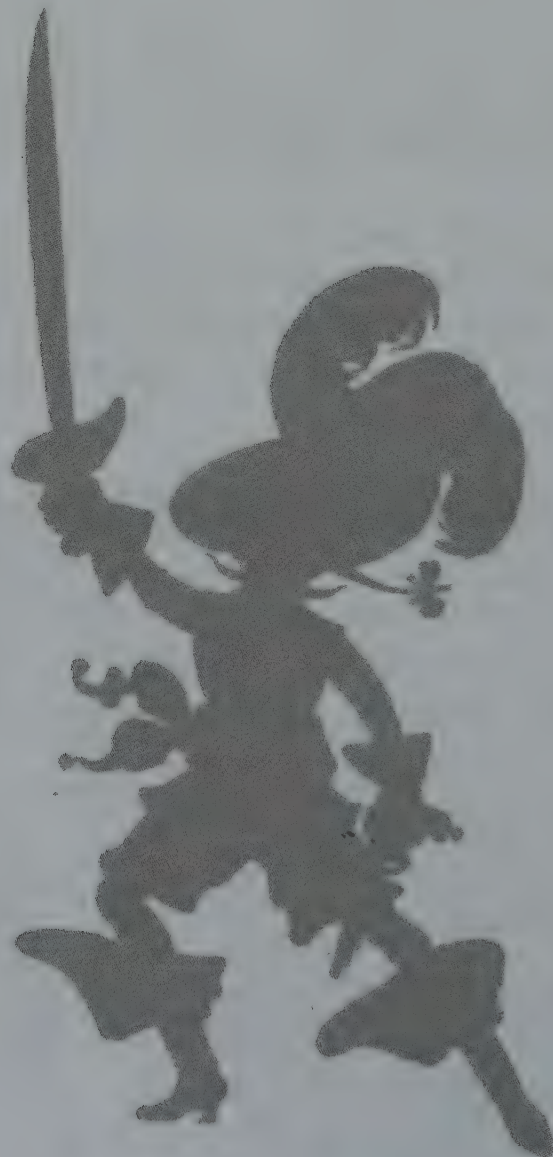
If you need these words today
 You'll know just what you should say
 Just remember "Re, Te, Ne"
 And you'll be a Latin star, star, star, star...!

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
Verbs	
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum	to grow, increase
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsū	to drive out
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum	to come upon, find, meet
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum	to be silent
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum	to try, test
Nouns	
mōs, mōris (m)	custom, habit; (in plural form) morals, character
nūbēs, nūbis (f, i)	cloud
Adjectives	
antīquus, -a, -um	old, ancient
senior, seniōris	older
hilaris, hilare	cheerful

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
timeō, timēre, timuī	to fear
adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c, i)	young man, adolescent
rēx, rēgis (m)	king
prīnceps, prīncipis (c)	leader, prince
cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)	citizenship, state, commonwealth



Imperatives Review

Do you remember what the **imperative** form of the verb is? It is a verb form that is used to express a **direct command**. Do you remember how this is done in English? Generally, we just drop out the pronoun (or noun) and start the sentence with the verb. (e.g. "Shut the door." "Open the window.") The "you" in these sentences is implied, rather than stated, most of the time, since whenever we give a direct command, it is given to a person we are speaking to. That means that these direct commands (or imperatives) are **always** in the 2nd person, and that their implied subject is always "you."

Imperatives in Latin: Singular Imperatives

Imperatives are very easy in Latin. All that you need to do is look at the 2nd principal part (the **infinitive**), the one that ends in "re," and chop that "re" off to get the singular imperative. In the first and second declensions, this means that the singular imperative is the same as the stem! Here are some examples used in sentences:

Donā dōnum.	Give the gift.
Cavē canem.	Beware of the dog.

For the 3rd conjugation, the singular imperative is formed in the same way. This means that imperatives of the 3rd conjugation will end in a short 'e'.

Crēde Deō.	Trust God.
------------	------------

Note: Crēdō takes the dative for the object when it is a person (called the "dative of person"). When the object is a thing it takes the accusative case ("accusative of thing").

Plural Imperatives

Once you understand singular imperatives, the plural ones are a piece of cake, too. All that you have to do is add a "te" to the end of the singular imperatives to get the plural imperative. The only little wrinkle here, as so often happens in Latin, comes in the 3rd conjugation. Here, as frequently happens with the 3rd conjugation, that short 'e' vowel changes to a short "i." Thus, the plural versions of the imperative sentences listed above would be:

Donāte dōnum.	(You all) Give the gift.
Cavēte canem.	(You all) Fear the dog.
Crēdite Deō.	(You all) Trust God.

Irregular Imperatives (dīc, dūc, fac, fer)

A few common verbs have irregular imperatives in the singular--here they are (shaded):

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
dīcō, dīcere	dīc (speak)	dīcite
dūcō, dūcere	dūc (lead)	dūcite
faciō, facere	fac (do, make)	facite
ferō, ferre	fer (carry, bear)	ferite

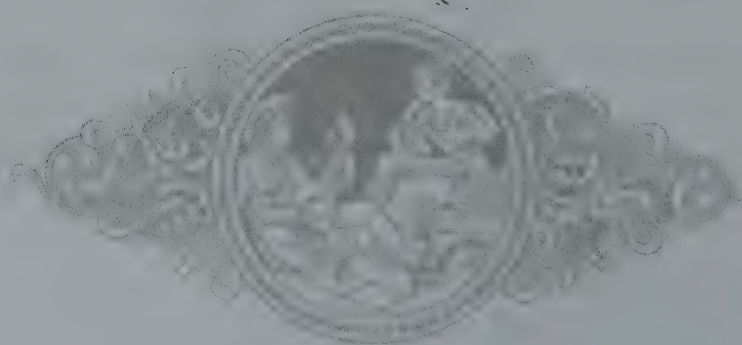
Re, Te and Ne

These three little words are attached to Latin verbs and each gives the Latin verb a special meaning. Here is what each means:

1. "Re" appears at the end of the infinitive forms of a verb. Thus amāre means "to love," vidēre means "to see," dūcere means "to lead" and audire means "to hear."
2. "Re" can also appear at the front of a Latin verb (a prefix) and means to repeat the action of the verb (best translated "back" or "again"). Thus re-portō means "I carry again" or "I carry back;" re-vocō means "I call again" or "I call back."
3. "Te" is attached to the end of a verb stem (a suffix) to form the plural imperative. This was just explained above!
4. "Ne" is attached to the end of a Latin verb to indicate that a question is coming which expects a 'yes' or 'no' answer. You studied this in Chapter 17. Here is another example:

Expulitne imperātor hostēs ā patriā?

Did the general expel the enemies from the country?



A. Vocabulary:

1. antīquus

9. timeō

2. nūbēs

10. rēx

3. adulēscēns

11. prīnceps

4. inveniō

12. cīvītās

5. taceō

13. senior

6. temptō

14. hilaris

7. crēscō

15. mōs

8. expellō

B. Chant: Fill in the blanks for this part of the *Re, Te, Ne* Song

“Re” the _____ form of a verb

“Te” means “_____ now”

“Ne” means a _____

If you get them right please take a bow!

C. Grammar:

1. How do you form the singular imperative?
2. How do you form the plural imperative?
3. What does it mean when “ne” is attached to the end of a verb?
4. Name the four irregular imperatives.

The captain tries to tell the sailors a story.

1. Magister dīxit, “Venīte, virī, et audīte. Nārrābō fābulam.”
2. Nautae omnēs ad eum ambulāvērunt. “Sedēte,” magister imperāvit. Omnēs sēdērunt.
3. Magister ūnum nautam, quī dormīvīt, spectāvit. “Nauta!” ille clāmāvit, “Stā!”
4. Nautam excitat¹ et nauta stat.
5. Magister dīxit, “Audī mē bene, nauta...moneō tē iam.”



¹ excitō, excitāre: to wake, rouse

Now that we've reviewed the forms for *ferō, ferre* last week, let's explore some interesting compounds that include *ferō*. After looking at the chart see if you can figure out what the word means. Then see how many English derivatives you can find from these compounds. (Check your work using a good dictionary.)

prefix +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	compound	meaning	derivatives?
ad +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum</i>		
ab +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum</i>		
con + (from cum)	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>cōnferō, cōnferre, cōntulī, cōnlātum</i>		
ex +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum</i>		
in +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātum</i>		
prae +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātum</i>		
prō +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>prōferō, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātum</i>		
re +	<i>ferō, ferre</i> =	<i>referō, referre, rettulī, relātum</i>		

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
antīquus, -ī	
senior, seniōris	
hilaris, hilare	
mōs, mōris (m)	
nūbēs, nūbis (f, i)	
crēsko, crēscere, crēvī, crētum	
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum	
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum	
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum	
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum	

B. Review (Previous Weeks') Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
timeō, timēre, timuī	
adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c)	
rēx, rēgis (m)	
prīnceps, prīncipis (c)	
cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)	



C. Chant: Fill in the blanks for this part of the *Re, Te, Ne* Song

“Re” the _____ form of a verb

“Te” means “_____ now”

“Ne” means a _____

If you get them right please take a bow!

D. Grammar:

1. How do you form the singular imperative?
2. How do you form the plural imperative?
3. What does it mean when “ne” is attached to the end of a verb?



Chapter 19

Unit 4

REVIEW:

Review of Chapters 17 and 18

After another five weeks of study you have learned another 20 words. Check the boxes of each word you don't know. Then review those words as much as you need to in order to master them. Remember to chant using your eyes, ears and voice.

CHAPTER 17

- ☐ agō, agere, ēgī, āctum _____
- ☐ custōdiō, custōdīre, custōdīvī/custōdīī, custōdītum _____
- ☐ edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum _____
- ☐ gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum _____
- ☐ tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum _____
- ☐ canis, canis (c) _____
- ☐ foedus, foederis (n) _____
- ☐ moenia, moenium (n. pl.) _____
- ☐ sonus, -ī _____
- ☐ statua, -ae _____

CHAPTER 18

- ☐ crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum _____
- ☐ expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum _____
- ☐ inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum _____
- ☐ taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum _____
- ☐ temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum _____
- ☐ mōs, mōris (m) _____
- ☐ nūbēs, nūbis (f) _____
- ☐ antīquus, -ī _____
- ☐ senior, seniōris _____
- ☐ hilaris, hilare _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 17	
agō	agent, agency, agile, agitate, agenda
custōdiō	custodian, custodial
edō	edible
gerō	no derivatives
tollō	no derivatives
canis	canine
foedus	federal, federalize, federalist, federalism, federation, federate, confederate, confederation
moenia	no derivatives
sonus	sound, sonic, sonar, sonorous
statua	statue, statuesque

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 18	
crēscō	crescent, increase, decrease, crease
expellō	expel, expulsion
inveniō	invent, invention, inventory
taceō	tacit, taciturn
temptō	attempt, temptation
mōs	mores
nūbēs	nebula, nebulous
antīquus	antiquate, antiquity, antique, antiquated
senior	senior, monsignor, señor, señora
hilaris	hilarious, hilarity, Hilary

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. Expel the guards!
2. The captain said to the sailors, "Be quiet now!"
3. The mother asked her children, "Will you eat your dinner?"
4. The father asked his son, "Did you find the dog?"
5. The captain ordered the soldiers, "Guard these enemies!"

Latin to English

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Frāter sorōrem monet, "Nolite* tollere cēnam meam."
2. Soror eius dīcit, "Ede cēnam tuam et edam** cēnam meam."
3. Frāter rogat, "Cupisne cibum tuum? Iam tacē!"
4. "Tū tacē!" respondet soror, cum magnā vōce.
5. "Liberī!" māter clāmat extrā casam. "Vōs tacitē!"

* nolite: be unwilling

** edam: future of edō

Equitātiō

MDCCLXXV

Est obscura nox, nox fātī. Iosephus Warren, medicus et Fīlius Libertātis, amicō nārrat, “Consilium Britannicōrum invēnimus. Mari venient. Festinā, monē incolās!” Celeriter Paulus Revere in noctem currit. Mox ad Antīquam Septentriōnālem Ecclēsiam advenit. Cum erat puer, Paulus saepe tintinnabella eius tractāverat. Iam est nullus sonus. Dum Rubrae Togae suprā dormiunt, aedituum duās lanternās in altā fenestrā pōnere iubet. Illae lanternae multōs virōs dē consiliō Britannicō monēbunt. Statim, Paulus Spadicem Fōrmam, suum equum, per cīvitātem equitat. Somnus incolās in casīs tenet. Sed iam fortis nūntius eōs clārīs verbīs excitat, “Britannici veniunt! Britannici veniunt!” Viri ē lectibus saliunt, parātī mōmentō temporis. Mox pugnāverint, necāverint, et perierint. Mox America et Britannia bellum gerent.

RESPONDĒ LATĪNĒ:

1. Quis est Iosephus Warren?
2. Quot lanternae sunt in fenestrā?
3. Quī in casā aedituī dormiunt?
4. Quem Revere equitat?
5. Quid Revere clāmat?

Glossary:

equitātiō, equitātiōnis, f.
horseride

obscurus, -a, -um, adj. dark

celeriter adv. quickly

Antīqua Septentriōnālis Ecclēsia = Old North Church

tintinnabella tractāverat = he had rung the bells

Rubrae Togae = redcoats

suprā, here *suprā* is used as an adverb

aedituus, -ī, m. sexton
(church attendant)

Spadix Fōrma = Brown Beauty, Paul Revere's horse

equitō, āre, āvī, ātum, to ride (a horse)

excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, to wake, to arouse

lectō, lectis, f. bed

saliō, salire, salivī, saltum, to leap, jump

mōmentō temporis, ablative of time within which = in a minute (lit. in a moment of time)

bellum gerere, idiom = to wage war

quis - who
quot - how many
quī - who (pl.)
quem - (acc.) whom
quid - what

Chapter 20

Unit 5

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 4th Declension (Masculine) Endings

	Singular:	Plural:
Nominative:	-us	-ūs
Genitive:	-ūs	-uum
Dative:	-uī	-ibus
Accusative:	-um	-ūs
Ablative:	-ū	-ibus

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
aditus, -ūs (m)	approach
adventus, -ūs (m)	approach, arrival
cāsus, -ūs (m)	fall, downfall; chance, accident
domus, -ūs (f) ¹	house
equitātus, -ūs (m)	cavalry
exercitus, -ūs (m)	army, infantry
exitus, -ūs (m)	exit, departure; end, conclusion
manus, -ūs (f)	hand, band, troop
passus, -ūs (m)	step, stride, pace
senātus, -ūs (m)	body of elders, senate

¹ domus is often seen in Latin literature with some 2nd declension endings. See Grammar Page for details.

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN ENGLISH

affirmō, affirmāre, affirmāvī,
affirmātum (also spelled "adfirmō")

to strengthen, assert, affirm

negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum

to deny

aedificō, aedificāre,
aedificāvī, aedificātum

to build, erect, establish

celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātum

to visit frequently (or in large numbers),
to fill, to celebrate

dēclārō, dēclārāre,
dēclārāvī, dēclārātum

to declare



The Fourth Declension

Take a close look at the fourth declension endings on the previous page. Notice that they're almost exactly the same as those of the 3rd declension, with the exception that a "u" generally replaces the "i" or "e" of the 3rd declension. The only exception to this rule is in the dative and ablative plural, where the "u" loses out to an "i". Compare the two side-by-side:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
3 rd Declension	4 th Declension	3 rd Declension	4 th Declension
-is/ x	-us	-ēs	-ūs
-is	-ūs	-um/ ium	-uum
-ī	-uī	ibus	-ibus
-em	-um	-ēs	-ūs
-e	-ū	-ibus	-ibus

Gender for the 4th Declension:

Like the 2nd declension (which also makes much use of the vowel "u"), the 4th declension is mostly a masculine one, but there are some important exceptions such as **manus** and **domus**, which are feminine.

Declension of "Domus"

In addition to being a gender-exception, **domus** also tends (depending on the text and the period in question) to have some exceptional endings in some cases. It is sometimes declined as a 2nd declension noun, but still retains its feminine gender.

	Singular:	Plural:
Nominative:	domus	domūs
Genitive:	domūs (domī)	domuum (domōrum)
Dative:	domuī (domō)	domibus
Accusative:	domum	domūs (domōs)
Ablative:	domū (domō)	domibus

Domus is also unique because many times it does not need prepositions that other nouns must have to show motion. Most nouns, such as **casa** (house), need the preposition **ad** + accusative to show “place to which” and **ab** + ablative to show “place from which.” However, **domus** needs only to be placed in the appropriate case without a preposition.

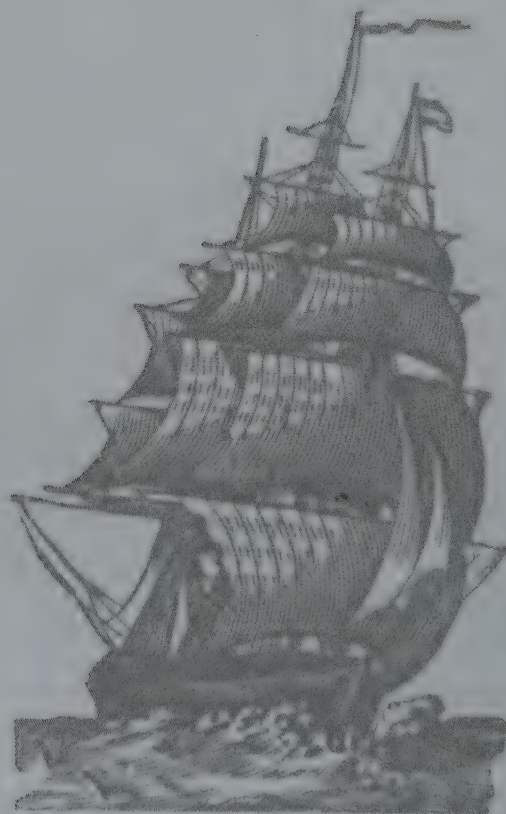
Eō ad casam *I go to the house*

Eō domum *I go to the house*

Eō ab casā *I go away from the house*

Eō domū (domō) *I go away from the house*

This rule also applies to the noun, **rūs, rūris** (country) and the names of cities, towns and small islands in the Mediterranean.



A. Vocabulary:

1. domus	9. passus
2. cāsus	10. senātus
3. aditus	11. affirmō
4. equitātus	12. dēclārō
5. manus	13. negō
6. exercitus	14. celebrō
7. adventus	15. aedificō
8. exitus	

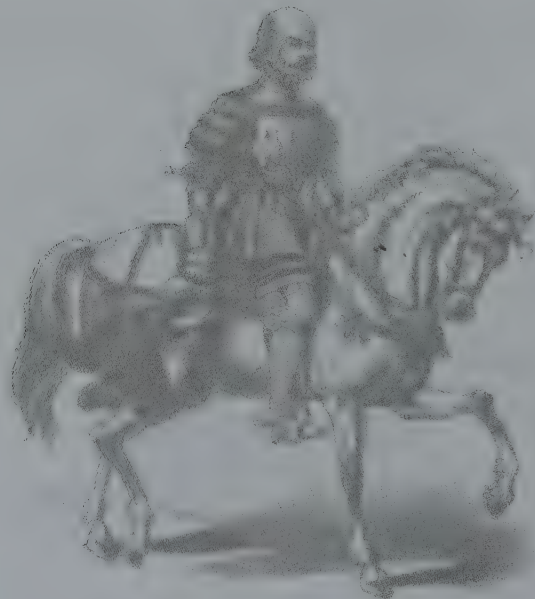
B. Chant: Give the 4th declension masculine endings. Remember to label the boxes.

C. Grammar:

- The 4th declension is very similar to the _____ declension except that it has the characteristic vowel _____.
- In gender, most 4th declension nouns are _____.
- Two exceptions to this rule of gender are _____ and _____.
- Which of these two also tends to have some exceptional endings?

The sailors catch a strong wind.

1. Tandem omnēs nautae nāvem cōscendērunt¹.
2. Ventus² (wind) magnus advēnit et ab insulā et in mare nāvem ēgit.
3. Magister nautīs dēclārāvit, “Nunc domum īmus! Hōc ventō magnō, adventus noster mox veniet.”
4. Deinde lēgātus dīxit, “Nōn sine casū discēdimus. Comes³ noster in insulam manet.”
5. Nautae fortēs īsulam abeunt et domum nāvigāvērunt.



¹ cōscendērunt: boarded

² ventus: wind

³ comes: comrade

Identifying the Declension of a Noun

By now you should be quite familiar with how to identify a noun's declension...the lexical or dictionary form gives you the necessary clues. What are those clues? The nominative and genitive (singular) forms. The chart below reviews the lexical forms for the first 4 declensions.

1 st Declension	2 nd Declension	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Declension	4 th Declension
puella, -ae	amīcus, -ī	oppidum, -ī	urbs, -is	domus, -ūs
	ager, agrī	officium, -ī	rēx, rēgis	

Note that the 2nd declension and the 4th declension look similar since they have the same nominative form (**amīcus, domus**). However, they have a different genitive form (**amīcī, domūs**). You can see how important it is to learn the lexical form for all nouns! Remember, the noun stem is what remains when you take the genitive singular ending off the noun.

Now try your hand at identifying the nouns below as either 1st, 2nd, 3rd or 4th declension.

Noun	Number of Declension	Noun Stem	Translation
casus, -ūs	4 th	cas	fall, chance, accident
puer, -ī			
vīnum, -ī			
iniūria, -ae			
exercitus, -ūs			
carrus, -ī			
cūra, -ae			
flōs, flōris			
lēgātus, -ī			
exitus, -ūs			
mors, mortis			
pars, partis			

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
aditus, -ūs	
adventus, -ūs	
cāsus, -ūs	
domus, -ūs	
equitātus, -ūs	
exercitus, -ūs	
exitus, -ūs	
manus, -ūs	
passus, -ūs	
senātus, -ūs	

B. Review Vocabulary (Chapter 14):

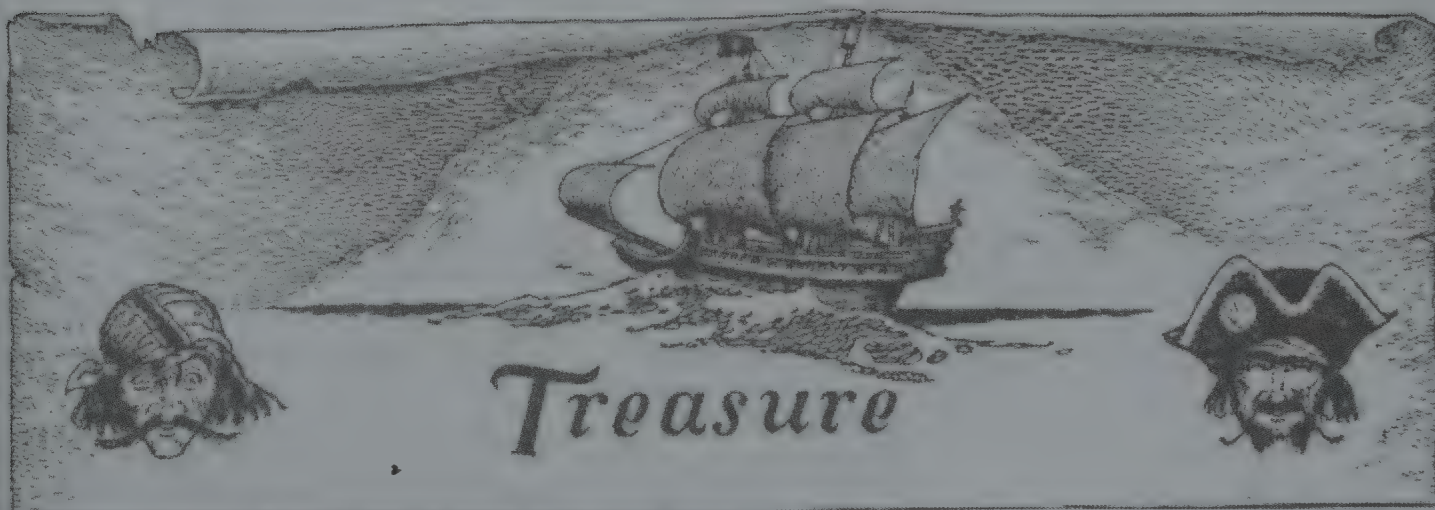
LATIN	ENGLISH
affirmō, affirmāre, affirmāvī, affirmātum (also spelled "adfirmō")	
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum	
aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum	
celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātum	
dēclarō, dēclārāre, dēclārāvī, dēclārātum	

C. Chant: 4th Declension (masculine) endings

	Singular	Plural
Nominative:		
Genitive:		
Dative:		
Accusative:		
Ablative:		

D. Grammar:

1. How is the 4th declension similar to and yet different from the 3rd declension?
2. What gender do 4th declension nouns tend to be?
3. What are two exceptions to this rule?
4. Which of these two also tends to have some exceptional endings?



Chapter 21

Unit 5

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 4th Declension (Neuter) Endings

	Singular:	Plural:
Nominative:	-ū	-ua
Genitive:	-ūs	-uum
Dative:	-ū	-ibus
Accusative:	-ū	-ua
Ablative:	-ū	-ibus

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
cornū, -ūs (neuter)	horn
genū, -ūs (neuter)	knee
commeātus, -ūs	passage; (military) lines of communication, supplies
conspectus, -ūs	view, sight
cursus, -ūs	running, a course
impetus, -ūs	attack, impetuosity, vehemence
lacus, -ūs	lake
magistrātus, -ūs	office, official
metus, -ūs	fear
occāsus, -ūs	falling, setting
portus, -ūs	harbor
ūsus, -ūs	use, advantage

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
dolor, dolōris (m)	pain, anguish, sorrow
timor, timōris (m)	fear
amor, amōris (m)	love
ars, artis (f)	art, skill
voluntās, voluntātis (f)	will, desire

The 4th Declension Neuter

If you take a close look at the 4th declension neuter endings on the previous page, you'll notice that they're almost exactly the same as those of the 3rd declension neuter. Generally the "u" of the 4th declension replaces the "i" or "e" of the 3rd declension. The only possible exception to this pattern is in the dative and ablative plural, where both declensions have "ibus" (you might have expected "ubus" in the 4th declension). Let's compare the 3rd declension neuter and 4th declension neuter side-by-side:

Neuter Singular		Neuter Plural	
3 rd Declension	4 th Declension	3 rd Declension	4 th Declension
-x	-ū	-a/-ia	-ua
-is	-ūs	-um/-ium	-uum
-ī	-uī	-ibus	-ibus
-x	-ū	-a/-ia	-ua
-e/-ī	-ū	-ibus	-ibus

The easy way to remember how to form the neuter in the 4th declension (or any declension) is simply to refer to the **Neuter Rule**: the nominative and accusative forms (in both the singular and plural) will always be the same. Therefore, if you have "ū" in the nominative you will have it in the accusative too. If you have "ua" in the nominative (plural) you will have in the accusative too. The second part to the neuter rule is that the nominative and accusative plural always always always end in short 'a' in every declension... and notice that they do, but after a characteristic 4th declension "u."

Fourth declension neuters are easy to spot in their lexical or dictionary form, because they will always be listed as with a single "ū" in the nominative singular. Look at the following two nouns, the first of which is neuter:

cornū, -ūs (neuter)

lacus, -ūs (masculine—like most all 4th declension nouns)

A. Vocabulary:

1. cursus9. portus2. impetus10. ūsus3. cornū11. dolor4. magistrātus12. timor5. metus13. voluntās6. commeātus14. ars7. occāsus15. amor8. conspectus

B. Chant: Give the 4th declension (neuter) endings. Remember to label the boxes, and to follow the **Neuter Rule!**

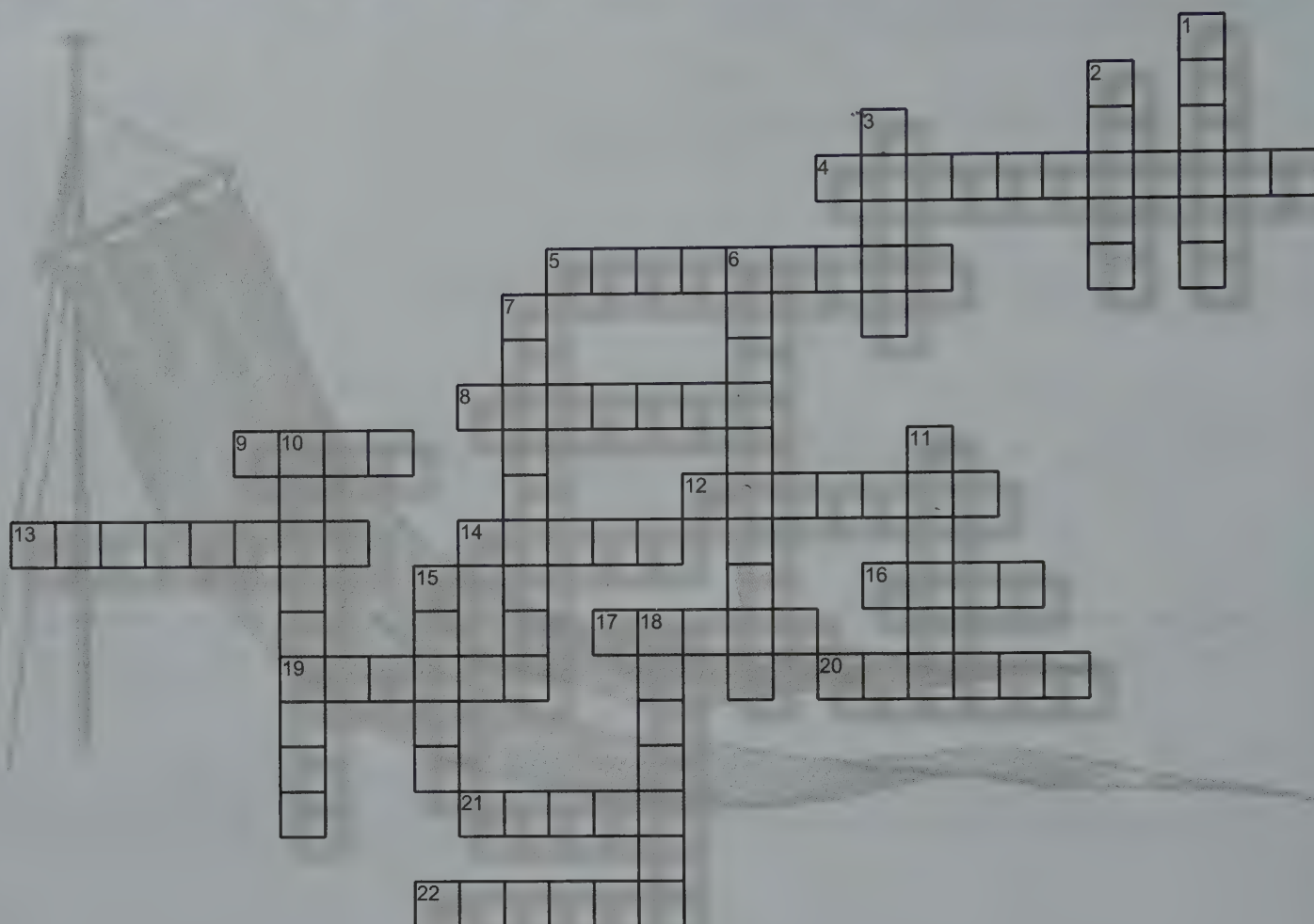
D. (Review) Grammar:

1. What forms do the 3rd and 4th declension have in common?
2. What gender do 4th declension nouns tend to be?
3. How can you tell that a 4th declension noun is neuter?
4. What does the Neuter Rule state?

The sailors discover they have no money.

1. Cum gaudiō nautae in mare ab īsulā nāvigāvērunt.
2. Ūnus nauta cornū sustulit. Illud cornū inflāvit (blew).
3. Omnēs nautae cecidērunt (fell) in genibus et deōs vocāvērunt.
4. Magister nautās rogāvit, “Habēmusne satis* commeātūs?” Ūnus nauta respondit, “Nōn habēmus satis* commeātūs sī (if) iter longus erit.”
5. Magister dixit, “Dēbēmus invenīre portum. Cibum emēmus (we will buy) in portū.”
6. Alter nauta inquit, “Sed pecūniam nōn habēmus!”
7. “Quid?” magister rogāvit, “Habēmusne nōn pecūniam? Magnum sacculum (sack) plēnum argentī habuimus!”
8. Nauta respondit, “Nauta perdidus sacculum tulit in silvam!”
9. “Fūr!” (thief) magister clāmāvit.

* *satis* with the genitive means “enough of _____.”

**Across**

- 4. office, official
- 5. trained body of troops
- 8. attack, charge
- 9. knee
- 12. body of elders, senate
- 13. approach, arrival
- 14. lake
- 16. use, advantage, experience
- 17. house
- 19. approach
- 20. step, stride, pace
- 21. hand, band, troop
- 22. harbor

Down

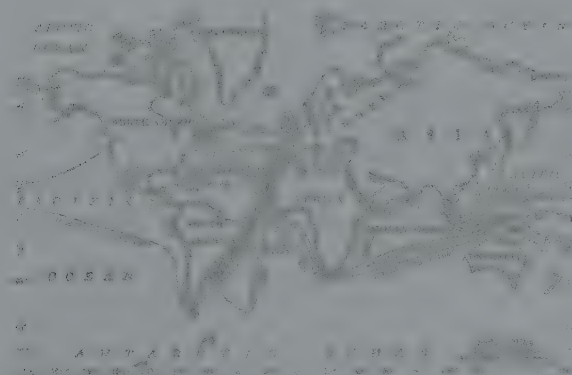
- 1. outcome, end, exit
- 2. horn
- 3. fall, chance, accident
- 6. view, sight
- 7. supplies
- 10. body of horsemen
- 11. running, a course
- 15. fear
- 18. falling, setting

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
cornū, -ūs	
commeātus, -ūs	
conspectus, -ūs	
cursus, -ūs	
impetus, -ūs	
magistrātus, -ūs	
metus, -ūs	
occāsus, -ūs	
portus, -ūs	
ūsus, -ūs	

B. Review Vocabulary :

LATIN	ENGLISH
dolor, dolōris (m)	
timor, timōris (m)	
amor, amōris (m)	
ars, artis (f)	
voluntās, voluntātis (f)	

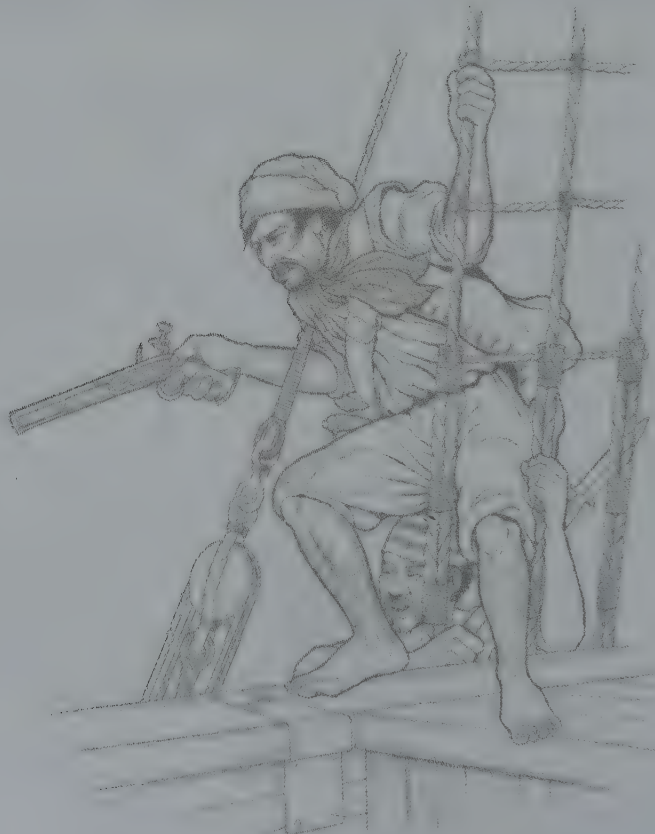


C. Chant: 4th Declension (Neuter) Endings

	Singular:	Plural:
Nominative:		
Genitive:		
Dative:		
Accusative:		
Ablative:		

D. (Review) Grammar:

1. What forms do the 3rd and 4th declension have in common?
2. What gender do 4th declension nouns tend to be?
3. How can you tell that a 4th declension noun is neuter?
4. What does the Neuter Rule state?



Chapter 22

Unit 5

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: 5th Declension Endings

	Singular:	Plural:
Nominative:	-ēs	-ēs
Genitive:	-eī/-ēī	-ērum
Dative:	-eī/-ēī	-ēbus
Accusative:	-em	-ēs
Ablative:	-ē	-ēbus

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN | ENGLISH

5th Declension Nouns

aciēs, -ēī	sharpness, sharp edge (cf. acer); (military) line of battle
diēs, -ēī (m)	day
fidēs, -ēī	faith, trust, pledge
merīdiēs, -ēī (m)	midday, noon
plānitiēs, -ēī	flat surface, level ground, plain
rēs, -eī	thing, matter
speciēs, -ēī	view, sight; outward appearance
spēs, -eī	hope, expectation

4th Declension Nouns

aestus, -ūs	agitation; heat; tide
ēventus, -ūs	event, fortune, accident; result
prīncipātus, -ūs	first place; post of commander in chief; principate; origin, beginning

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN | ENGLISH

uxor, uxōris (f)	wife
vestis, vestis (f, i)	clothing, garment
lūx, lūcis (f)	light
nox, noctis (f, i)	night
dēns, dentis (m, i)	tooth

Remember: the
"i" stands for
"i-stem"

The 5th Declension:

This week we learn the final declension, the **5th declension**. Once again, other than having an “e” in places where the 3rd declension has an “i”, the 5th declension is similar in its endings to the 3rd. Here, in fact, there’s even an “ē”, rather than an “i” in the “ēbus” forms! The one area where this comparison still doesn’t work, though, is in the genitive plural forms, which bear more resemblance to the 1st declension: **ērūm** (5th declension) looks like **ārūm** (1st declension). Have you noticed that ALL genitive plural forms (in every declension) end in **-um**?

Singular		Plural	
3 rd Declension	5 th Declension	3 rd Declension	5 th Declension
-x	-ēs	-ēs	-ēs
-is	-eī/-ēī	-um/-ium	-ērūm
-ī	-eī/-ēī	-ibus	-ēbus
-em	-em	-ēs	-ēs
-e	-ē	-ibus	-ēbus

Gender of the 5th Declension:

The **5th declension words are feminine** like that of the 1st declension, with the exception of **diēs** and its compounds (like **meridiēs**), which are masculine. This brings us to another point: certain vowels (or vowel sounds) tend to be characteristic of certain genders. In fact, this pattern is true across several other related Indo-European languages, like Spanish, Italian and Greek. The chart below lays out this pattern:

Gender Trend	Mostly Feminine	Masculine or Feminine	Mostly Masculine
Characteristic Vowel	A & E	I	O & U
Declensions	1 st and 5 th Declensions	3 rd Declension	2 nd and 4 th Declensions

A. Vocabulary:

1. speciēs2. fidēs3. aciēs4. diēs5. merīdiēs6. aestus7. spēs8. plānitiēs9. rēs10. prīncipātus11. ēventus12. uxor13. dēns14. vestis15. nox16. lūxB. Chant: Give the 5th declension endings. Remember to label the boxes.

C. Grammar:

1. 5th declension words tend to be _____ in gender.

2. _____ and _____ are two words from this week's wordlist that are masculine rather than feminine.

3. The vowels _____ and _____ tend to be characteristic of masculine words and the vowels _____ and _____ tend to be characteristic of feminine words.

The sailors express confidence in their captain and look for an island and port.

1. Nautae diem tōtum et noctem tōtam nāvigāvērunt. Eī nec (neither) īnsulam nec (nor) portum invēnērunt.
2. Primā lūce*, omnēs nautae ante magistrum convēnērunt.
3. “Nōlite perdere (to lose) spem” magister inquit. “Multōs diēs vīvere possumus com meatū quem (which) habēmus.”
4. Magister nautās rogāvit: “Habētisne fidem in prīcipātū meō?”
5. “Nōs fidem habēmus” eī dīxērunt. “Euge!” magister dīxit. “Etiam fidem in tē habeō. Conspectum īnsulae et portūs petēmus (we will seek).”
6. Nautae ēventum nescīvērunt sed fidem magnam in magistrō suō habuērunt.

* *primā lūce* literally means “at first light” or in other words, dawn.



Chart of all 5 declensions: Study the chart below

	1 st Decl.		2 nd Decl.		3 rd Decl.		4 th Decl.		5 th Decl.	
Nom.	a	ae	us	ī	x	ēs	us	ūs	ēs	ēs
Gen.	ae	ārum	ī	ōrum	is	um	ūs	uum	eī/eī	ērum
Dat.	ae	īs	ō	īs	ī	ibus	uī	ibus	eī/eī	ēbus
Acc.	am	ās	um	ōs	em	ēs	um	ūs	em	ēs
Abl.	ā	īs	ō	īs	e	ibus	ū	ibus	ē	ēbus

Now cover the chart above with a piece of paper and try to fill in the empty chart below.

	1 st Decl.		2 nd Decl.		3 rd Decl.		4 th Decl.		5 th Decl.	
Nom.	a	ae	us	ī	x	ēs	us	ūs	ēs	ēs
Gen.										
Dat.										
Acc.										
Abl.										

Since almost all the nouns (except *diēs*) in the 5th declension are feminine, almost all the adjectives that modify them will be in the feminine form. Study the first three examples in the left column, then add the proper adjectives (in the feminine form) to the nouns in the remaining spaces. Several adjectives used are from Chapter 3.

long day (nom.)	diēs longus	of last battle	
bad things (nom.)	rēs malae	to/for wonderful thing	
by strong hope	spē fortī	happy days (nom.)	
of great faith		of every day	
wide plains (acc.)		heavy things (acc.)	
brief day (nom.)		noble appearance (nom.)	
pretty appearance (acc.)		by/with difficult battles	
for strange matter		sweet hope (acc.)	

A. New (This Week's) Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
aciēs, -ēī	
diēs, -ēī	
meridiēs, -ēī	
fidēs, -ēī	
rēs, -eī	
spēs, -eī	
plānitiēs, -ēī	
speciēs, -ēī	
aestus, -ūs	
ēventus, -ūs	
prīncipātus, -ūs	
uxor, uxōris (f)	
vestis, vestis (f, i)	
lūx, lūcis (f)	
nox, noctis (f, i)	
dēns, dentis (m, i)	

B. Chant: Give the 5th declension endings and label the boxes.

D. Grammar:

1. What gender do 5th declension nouns tend to be?
2. What two words from this week's word list are exceptions to this rule?
3. What two vowels tend to be characteristic of feminine words?
4. What two vowels tend to be characteristic of masculine words?

Chapter 23

Unit 5

REVIEW:

Review of Chapters 20, 21 and 22

After another five weeks of study you have learned another 30 words. Check the boxes of each word you don't know. Then review those words as much as you need to in order to master them. Remember to chant using your eyes, ears and voice.

CHAPTER 20

- ☐ aditus, -ūs _____
- ☐ adventus, -ūs _____
- ☐ cāsus, -ūs _____
- ☐ domus, -ūs (f) _____
- ☐ equitātus, -ūs _____
- ☐ exercitus, -ūs _____
- ☐ exitus, -ūs _____
- ☐ manus, -ūs (f) _____
- ☐ passus, -ūs _____
- ☐ senātus, -ūs _____

CHAPTER 21

- ☐ cornū, -ūs (n) _____
- ☐ genū, -ūs (n) _____
- ☐ commeātus, -ūs _____
- ☐ conspectus, -ūs _____
- ☐ cursus, -ūs _____
- ☐ impetus, -ūs _____
- ☐ lacus, -ūs _____
- ☐ magistrātus, -ūs _____
- ☐ metus, -ūs _____
- ☐ occāsus, -ūs _____
- ☐ portus, -ūs _____
- ☐ ūsus, -ūs _____

CHAPTER 22

- ☐ aciēs, -ēī _____
- ☐ diēs, -ēī (m) _____
- ☐ fidēs, -ēī _____
- ☐ merīdiēs, -ēī (m) _____
- ☐ plānitiēs, -ēī _____
- ☐ rēs, -eī _____
- ☐ speciēs, -ēī _____
- ☐ spēs, -eī _____
- ☐ aestus, -ūs _____
- ☐ ēventus, -ūs _____
- ☐ prīncipātus, -ūs _____



Running Part. — Tackle showing (a) running part, (c) standing part, (b) end hauled on.

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 20

aditus	adit (a nearly horizontal passage from the surface of a mine)
adventus	advent, adventure, adventuresome
cāsus	casualty, casual, casually
domus	domicile, domesticate, domesticated, domestic
equitātus	related to the Latin word equus (horse)
exercitus	exercise
exitus	exit, exodus, issue (the action of going, coming or flowing out)
manus	manual, manufacture (manus + faciō : I make) manumit (manus + mittō : I send), manuscript (manus + scribō : I write)
passus	pace, pacer, pass
senātus	senate (related to the Latin word senātor -- same as English)

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 21	
cornū	cornucopia ("horn of plenty")
genū	genuflect, genuflection (flectō = I bend)
commeātus	no derivatives
conspectus	conspicuous (obvious to the eye or mind; clearly noticeable), inconspicuous
cursus	course, discourse, cursive. <i>Cursus</i> is related to <i>currō</i> : I run.
impetus	impetus (a driving force), impetuous (impulsive vehemence or anger)
lacus	lake
magistrātus	magistrate, magisterial
metus	meticulous (extreme or excessive care, perhaps because of fear)
occāsus	occasion, occasional, occasionally

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 22

aciēs	related to the Latin word acēre (to be sour) and acidus (acid)
diēs	diary, diurnal, journal (from diurnus : of the day) <i>carpe diem</i> (seize the day); <i>per diem</i> (by the day)
fidēs	fiduciary, confide, confidence, fidelity, infidelity; <i>sola fide</i> (by faith alone); <i>semper fidelis</i> (always faithful—motto of the U.S. Marine Corps)
merīdiēs	<i>ante meridiem</i> (a.m.); <i>post meridiem</i> (p.m.)
plānitiēs	plain
rēs	reify (to regard as a material thing); real (of or relating to fixed, permanent or immovable things; occurring in fact)
speciēs	special, specialty, species, specific, specious, specimen
spēs	despair, desperate, desperation
aestus	aestival (of or relating to summer); <i>aestivate</i> (to pass the summer in a sluggish manner)
ēventus	event, eventual, eventually, eventuality

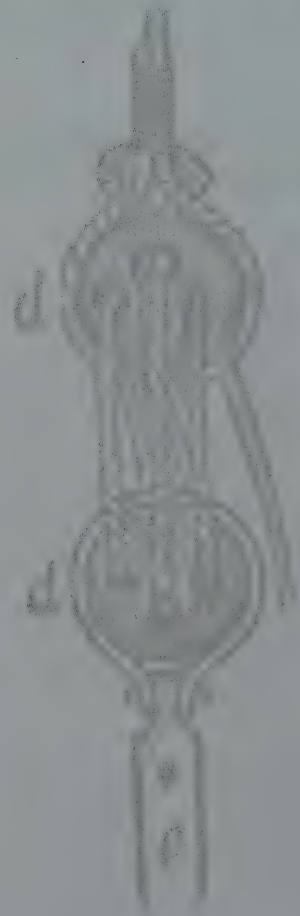
Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

ENGLISH TO LATIN

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The approach to the port was wide.
2. The captain raised his hand and greeted the sailors.
3. The end of the journey is coming.
4. The sailors had no fear of the large waves.
5. The appearance of the sea was beautiful.
6. A storm rose after noon.



LATIN TO ENGLISH

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Pater et filiū aedificābant domum novam.
2. Illam domum saxīs faciēbant.
3. Pater ūnō filiō dīxit, “Dā mihi illud saxum magnum. Tenē saxum manibus duābus. Cāsum nōn cupiō.”
4. “Hīc!” (here) filius clāmāvit, quī saxum magnum tenēbat.
5. Alter filius patrī dīxit, “Merīdiēs est et calidus¹ sum. Possumusne quiēscere nunc?”
6. Pater respondit, “Prīmum (first), dā mihi alterum saxum.”

¹ *calidus, -a, -um*: warm, hot

Chapter 24

Unit 6

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Personal Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person: ego, tū / I, you

	Case	1 st person: <i>I, me</i>	2 nd person: <i>you</i>
Singular	Nom.	ego (I)	tū (you)
	Gen.	meī (of me)	tuī (of you)
	Dat.	mihi (to, for me)	tibi (to, for you)
	Acc.	mē (me)	tē (you)
	Abl.	mē (by, with, from me)	tē (by, with, from you)
		<i>we</i>	<i>you (plural)</i>
Plural	Nom.	nōs (we)	vōs (you)
	Gen.	nostrum (nostrī)* (of us)	vestrum (vestrī)* (of you)
	Dat.	nōbīs (to, for us)	vōbīs (to, for you)
	Acc.	nōs (us)	vōs (you)
	Abl.	nōbīs (by, with, from us)	vōbīs (by, with, from you)

* Alternative form for the genitive plural

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
confirmō, -āre, confirmāvī, confirmātum	to strengthen, assert
liberō, -āre, liberāvī, liberātum	to set free
occupō, -āre, occupāvī, occupātum	to seize, occupy
superō, -āre, superāvī, superātum	to overcome, surpass, defeat
fuga, -ae	flight, escape
victōria, -ae	victory
amicitia, -ae	friendship

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
appellō, -āre, appellāvī, appellātum	to call, address
nūntiō, -āre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum	to give news, announce
nauta, -ae (m)	sailor
fāma, -ae	reputation, rumor
lingua, -ae	tongue, language
memoria, -ae	memory
pecūnia, -ae	money
poena, -ae	penalty, punishment

USE OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

You should remember from previous study that pronouns take the place of nouns—they are like substitute nouns. Since a noun names a person, place or thing, the pronoun that replaces a person is called a **personal** pronoun. When referring to myself (the 1st person) I usually don't use my name—instead I use words like *I* and *me*. If I were to speak directly to you (the 2nd person) I would not usually use your name but would use the word *you*. When I speak about another person (the 3rd person) I can use his or her name, or use the words *he*, *she*, *him* or *her*. Next week you will learn the Latin pronouns for the 3rd person, *is*, *ea*, *id*. In this chapter you are learning the Latin pronouns for the 1st and 2nd person, *ego*, *nōs* (1st) and *tū*, *vōs* (2nd).

In English we use these personal pronouns a lot. The Romans did not have to use them as much because their verbs already contained them (*amō* has the *I* built right in—"I love"). Still, they are quite frequent in Latin. Look at the following sentences and see how personal pronouns are used in English and Latin.

ENGLISH	LATIN
You are big.	<i>Tū es magnus.</i>
I am small.	<i>Ego sum parvus.</i>
We love Italy.	<i>Ītaliā nōs amāmus.</i>
You all see Rome. You all see it.	<i>Rōmā vōs vidētis.</i> <i>Vōs vidētis eā.</i>
Marcus gives the money to me.	<i>Marcus dat pecūniā mihi.</i>
Julia gives the money to you.	<i>Iūlia dat pecūniā tibi.</i>
Marcus calls me and you.	<i>Marcus appellat mē et tē.</i>
They announce the punishment to us.	<i>Poenā nōbīs nūntiant.</i>
They will not overcome us.	<i>Nōs nōn superābunt.</i>
I will hear you now.	<i>Vōs nunc audiam.</i>

A Matter of Emphasis

Why say *Ītaliā nōs amāmus*, when you can simply say *Ītaliā amāmus*? Or why say *Ego sum parvus*, when you can say *Sum parvus*? Well, the answer is *emphasis*. When the Romans really wanted to emphasize who was doing something they would use the verb along with the personal pronoun. So *Ītaliā nōs amāmus* means "We love Italy."

While this is Latin class, rather than English class, it's very helpful (as you've no doubt found) to be "up to speed" on your English grammar in order to do the best possible job of understanding Latin and translating it into English. Now, you've probably noticed that English nouns don't have "case" in the same way that Latin ones do, but you may not know that **English pronouns do have case!** Knowing the case of your English pronouns can be very helpful when translating from Latin to English. Luckily, English pronouns only have 3 cases, rather than 5 like Latin. Take a look at the table below and you can see all of the English personal pronouns, laid out according to their person, number and case.

Number	English Case	1 st Person	2 nd Person	3 rd Person		
				M	F	N
Singular	Nominative (like Latin <i>nom.</i>)	I	you	he	she	it
	Possessive (like Latin <i>genitive</i>)	my/ mine	your/ yours	his	her/ hers	its
	Objective (like Latin <i>accus.</i>)	me	you	him	her	it
Plural	Nominative	we	you	they	they	they
	Possessive	our/ ours	your/ yours	their/ theirs	their/ theirs	their/ theirs
	Objective	us	you	them	them	them

The English nominative case just about perfectly matches up with the Latin nominative case; it is used for subjects and predicate nominatives. The English possessive case is used for many of the situations for which Latin uses the genitive case, though sometimes the Latin genitive case is best translated with the English objective case + the preposition "of":

casa eius the house of her *or* her house (English possessive)

The English objective case (sometimes together with a specific preposition) should be used at all times to translate the Latin dative, accusative and ablative cases. That is because the English objective case is used for all direct objects, indirect objects and objects of the preposition. Study these examples:

Dā librum mihi (dat.)	Give the book to me (obj. case of “me” with “to”)
Ambulāte sine mē (abl.)	Walk without me (obj. case of “me” with “without”)
Ambulāte ad mē (acc.)	Walk toward me (obj. case of “me” with “toward”)

The table below summarizes how each Latin case should be translated into English:

Latin Case	Translate as...	...or translate as
Nominative	English Nominative for a subject (SP)	English Nominative for a predicate nominative (PrN)
Genitive	English Possessive Case for a Possessive Pronoun Adjective (PPA)	English Objective Case + “of”
Dative	English Objective Case for an Indirect Object Adjective (IO)	English Objective Case + “to/for”
Accusative	English Objective Case for a Direct Object (DO)	English Objective Case + a preposition (OP)
Ablative	English Objective Case + a preposition (OP)	English Objective Case + “by/with/from”



A. Vocabulary:

1. memoria2. nūntiō3. fāma4. nauta5. poena6. appellō7. lingua8. confirmō9. occupō10. superō11. amīcitia12. pecūnia13. līberō14. fuga15. victōriaB. Chant: Give the forms for the 1st and 2nd person personal pronouns.
Remember to label the boxes.

Singular	Case	1 st person: <i>I, me</i>	2 nd person: <i>you</i>
	Nom.	ego (I)	tū (you)
Plural		<i>we</i>	<i>you (plural)</i>
	Nom.	nōs (we)	vōs (you)

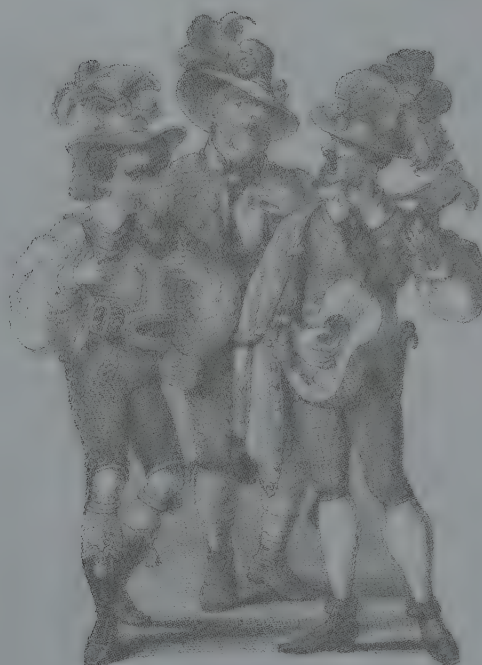
C. Grammar:

- Why is a pronoun a kind of “substitute” noun?
- We call certain pronouns “personal” pronouns because they _____.
- Since pronouns are already contained in Latin verbs, the Romans often used them for _____.

Try translating the following sentences into English.
They all contain one personal pronoun.

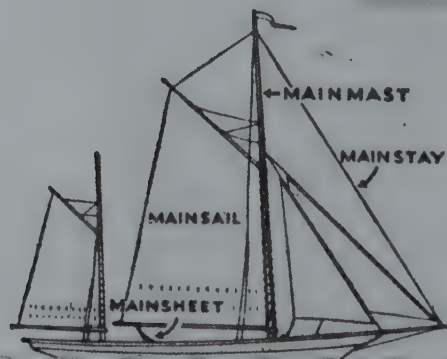
LATIN	ENGLISH
Tū es iūstus et beātus.	
Ego sum vīvus.	
Silvam nōs vidēmus.	
Stellam vōs vidētis. Vōs eam vidētis.	
Marcus vestem mihi dat.	
Iūlia avem tibi dat.	
Marcus mē et tē negat.	
Senex vērītātem nōbīs dēclārat.	
Nōs nōn affirmant.	
Vōbīs* nunc crēdam.	

* Remember crēdō takes the “dative of person” but “accusative of thing”!



Match the Latin pronoun with correct English translation:

mihi	of me
vōs	to you or by, with or from you (pl.)
ego	to us or by, with or from us
tuī	to you
nōs	you (subject) or you (direct object) (pl.)
nostrum	you or by, with or from you (sing.)
tibi	I
mē	me or by, with or from me
meī	of you
nōbīs	of us
vōbīs	to me
tē	we or us



A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
confirmō, -āre, confirmāvī, confirmātum	
liberō, -āre, liberāvī, liberātum	
occupō, -āre, occupāvī, occupātum	
superō, -āre, superāvī, superātum	
confirmō, -āre, confirmāvī, confirmātum	
liberō, -āre, liberāvī, liberātum	
fuga, -ae	
victōria, -ae	
amicitia, -ae	

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
lingua, -ae	
memoria, -ae	
fāma, -ae	
nauta, -ae (m)	
pecūnia, -ae	

C. Chant: Give the 1st and 2nd person personal pronouns

Singular	Case	1 st person: <i>I, me</i>	2 nd person: <i>you</i>
	Nom.		
	Gen.		
	Dat.		
	Acc.		
	Abl.		
Plural		<i>we</i>	<i>you (plural)</i>
	Nom.		
	Gen.		
	Dat.		
	Acc.		
	Abl.		

D. Grammar:

1. Why is a pronoun a kind of “substitute” noun?
2. We call certain pronouns “personal” pronouns because they _____.
3. Since pronouns are already contained in Latin verbs, the Romans often used them for _____.
4. Do English pronouns have cases like Latin pronouns do?



Chapter 25

Unit 6

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Personal Pronouns of the 3rd Person: *is, ea, id / he, she, it*

	Case	M	F	N
Singular	Nom.	is (he)	ea (she)	id (it)
	Gen.	eius (of him, his)	eius (of her, hers)	eius (of it)
	Dat.	eī (to him)	eī (to her)	eī (to it)
	Acc.	eum (him)	eam (her)	id (it)
	Abl.	eō (by, with him)	eā (by, with her)	eō (by, with it)
Plural	Nom.	eī (they)	eae (they)	ea (they)
	Gen.	eōrum (of them)	eārum (of them)	eōrum (of them)
	Dat.	eīs (to them)	eīs (to them)	eīs (to them)
	Acc.	eōs (them)	eās (them)	ea (them)
	Abl.	eīs (by, with them)	eīs (by, with them)	eīs (by, with them)

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
propinquus, -a, -um	near
pūblicus, -a, -um	public
proprius, -a, -um	own, one's own
tardus, -a, -um	late
ignārus, -a, -um	ignorant, unaware; unknown
calidus, -a, -um	warm, hot
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred, holy
emō, emere, ēmī, emptum	to buy
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum	to hand over, give up, surrender
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum	to leave behind, abandon
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum	to distinguish, understand
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	to send

USE OF PRONOUNS

As we saw last week, pronouns take the place of nouns—they are like substitute nouns. You know that a noun (from the Latin *nōmen*, “name”) names a person, place or thing. The following words would all be nouns: *table, house, father, mother, city, Rome, Italy, country, Mark, sea*. Can you list these words in Latin? They would be: *mēnsa, casa, pater, māter, urbs, Rōma, Ītalia, patria, Marcus, mare*. Pronouns take the place of these kinds of words. We can replace *house* with *it*, just as we can replace *Mark* with *he*.

Instead of saying, “The house is big,” we may also say “It is big.” Do you see how *It* replaces *house*? *It* must be a pronoun! Now look at the following sentences and see how a pronoun replaces each noun.

ENGLISH	LATIN
Marcus is big. He is big.	Marcus est magnus. Is est magnus.
The house is small. It is small.	Casa est parva. Ea est parva.
Italy is a good country. It is a good country.	Italia est patria bona. Ea est patria bona.
I see Rome. I see it.	Rōmam videō. Eam videō.
The mother lives in the city. She lives in the city.	Māter in urbe habitat. Ea in urbe habitat.
I don't see the sun. I don't see it.	Sōlem nōn videō. Eum nōn videō.
I hear the sea. I hear it.	Mare audiō. Id audiō.
The sea is beautiful. It is beautiful.	Mare est pulchrum. Id est pulchrum.
Marcus expects mother. He expects her.	Marcus mātrem expectat. Is eam expectat.

Note that a pronoun is always the same gender (masculine, feminine or neuter) as the noun it replaces. Review the *is, ea, id* table if you need to. If a noun is masculine it takes the masculine form of the pronoun. Since *Marcus* is masculine, the pronoun we use is *is* to replace *Marcus*. Since *Ītalia* is feminine, we use the pronoun *ea* to replace *Ītalia*. Since *mare* is neuter, we use the pronoun *id* to replace *mare*.

A. Vocabulary:

1. proprius8. emō2. tardus9. propinquus3. calidus10. relinquō4. ignārus11. intellegō5. sacer12. mittō6. plēnus13. pūblicus7. trādōB. Chant: List the Personal Pronouns of the 3rd Person: is, ea, id

Singular	Case	M	F	N
	Nom.	is (he)	ea (she)	id (it)
	Gen.			
	Dat.			
	Acc.			
	Abl.			
Plural				
	Nom.	eī (they)	eae (they)	ea (they)
	Gen.			
	Dat.			
	Acc.			
	Abl.			



Try now to translate the following sentences, which use various forms of **is**, **ea**, **id**. Look at the **is**, **ea**, **id** table at the beginning of the chapter to give you help.

The sailors find a port.

1. Post multōs diēs, ūnus nauta īnsulam novam vīdit. Is clāmāvit: “Īnsulam videō! Venīte et spectāte!”
2. Omnēs nautae ad illum cucurrērunt. “Ubī ea est?” rogāvērunt.
3. “Ea ibi (there) est,” nauta dīxit.
4. Nāvis prope īnsulam nāvigāvit. “Vidētisne portum?” magister rogāvit.
5. Portum nōn videō, sed oppidum parvum videō.
6. “Ubī?” magister dīxit. “Id nōn videō.”
7. “Id in summō* monte est,” nauta dīxit.
8. “Nunc id videō!” magister clāmāvit.

* summō is from the adjective summus, -a, -um: *highest, greatest*.

Working with Derivatives

A. New (This Week's) Vocabulary:

Latin	English
propinquus, -a, -um	
pūblicus, -a, -um	
proprius, -a, -um	
tardus, -a, -um	
ignārus, -a, -um	
calidus, -a, -um	
sacer, sacra, sacrum	
plēnus, -a, -um	
emō, emere, ēmī, emptum	
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum	
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum	
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum	
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	

B. Chant: List the Personal Pronouns of the 3rd Person: is, ea, id

Singular	Case	M	F	N
	Nom.	is (he)	ea (she)	id (it)
	Gen.			
	Dat.			
	Acc.			
	Abl.			
Plural				
	Nom.	eī (they)	eae (they)	ea (they)
	Gen.			
	Dat.			
	Acc.			
	Abl.			

Chapter 26

Unit 6

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Demonstrative Pronoun or Adjective hic, haec, hoc (*this, these*)

Singular	Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Nom.	hic (this)	haec	hoc
	Gen.	huius (of this)	huius	huius
	Dat.	huic (to, for this)	huic	huic
	Acc.	hunc (this)	hanc	hoc
	Abl.	hōc (by, with, from this)	hāc	hōc
Plural				
	Nom.	hī (these)	hae	haec
	Gen.	hōrum (of these)	hārum	hōrum
	Dat.	hīs (to, for these)	hīs	hīs
	Acc.	hōs (these)	hās	haec
	Abl.	hīs (by, with, from these)	hīs	hīs

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN | ENGLISH VERBS

frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum	to break
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum	to give back, return, restore
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum	to seek, search for
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum	to pull, drag
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	to turn, turn around

ADVERBS

certē	certainly
bene	well

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS/ADJECTIVES

hic, haec, hoc	this
----------------	------

ADJECTIVES

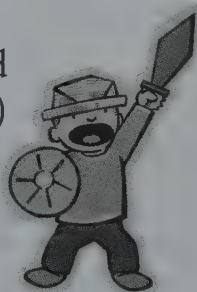
multus, multa, multum	many
territus, territa, territum	frightened, afraid
aureus, aurea, aureum	golden
anxius, anxia, anxium	worried, troubled
aeternus, aeterna, aeternum	eternal, everlasting
paulus, paula, paulum	little, small

USE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

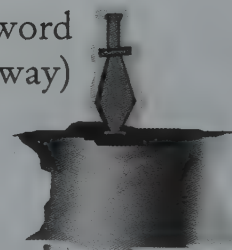
You remember from your study two weeks ago that pronouns take the place of nouns—they are like substitute nouns. Since a noun names a person, place or thing, the pronoun that replaces a person is called a **personal pronoun**. You learned that *I* and *we* are personal pronouns (of the 1st person) in English or *ego* and *nōs* in Latin. You learned that *you* is a personal pronoun (of the 2nd person) existing in Latin as *tū* (sing.) or *vōs* (plural). You also learned that *he*, *she* and *it* are personal pronouns (of the 3rd person) existing in Latin as *is*, *ea*, *id*.

Well, **demonstrative pronouns** also take the place of nouns—they replace a noun that has been mentioned before. We call them *demonstrative* pronouns because they show or point out a person or thing (from *dēmōnstrō*, *dēmōnstrāre*, *I show*). In English we have two demonstrative pronouns, *this* and *that* (and *these* and *those* in the plural.) The distinction between *this* and *that* can be used to contrast one thing with another or to refer to things that are not the same distance away. *This* is used for things close by and *that* is used for things distant (*This* here, *that* over there).

This sword
(close by)



That sword
(farther away)

**Demonstrative Adjectives**

When we use the word *this* or *that* to replace a noun it is a **demonstrative pronoun**; when we use the word *this* or *that* with a noun to point it out we call it a **demonstrative adjective**. In other words, when demonstratives modify nouns, they function as emphatic adjectives. This can be tricky. Look at the examples below for clarification:

Demonstrative Pronoun	Demonstrative Adjective
I have a new sword, and <i>this</i> is it.	<i>This</i> sword is long and heavy.
I would not carry <i>that</i> , it's too heavy.	I will not carry <i>that</i> sword into battle.
I will give <i>this</i> to you.	He gave <i>this</i> sword to me.

In the first column, the words *this* and *that* **replace** the word *sword*; in the second column, the words *this* and *that* **modify or point out** the word *sword*.

In Latin the words for *this* are **hic, haec, hoc** (see the chart). The endings for these words are a bit irregular—in the singular they don't always follow the pattern we have learned for other nouns, but they are easily learned. Because of some identical forms in each gender, it is best to chant these forms “across” (**hic, haec, hoc; huius, huius, huius...**) rather than “down.”

Study the chart below to see how **hic, haec and hoc** can be used as either a demonstrative pronoun (replacing a previously mentioned noun) or a demonstrative adjective (pointing out and modifying a noun):

Demonstrative Pronoun	Demonstrative Adjective
I have a new sword, and <i>this</i> is it.	<i>This</i> sword is long and heavy.
Gladium novum habeō et hic is est.	Hic gladius longus et gravis est.
I will give <i>this</i> to you.	He gives <i>this</i> sword to me.
Hunc tibi dābō.	Hunc gladium mihi dat.

Other Demonstrative Pronouns and Substantive Adjectives

Our vocabulary list includes some other demonstrative pronouns and adjectives. They function in the same way as **hic, haec, hoc**. When they stand alone they function as a pronoun (replacing a previously mentioned noun) and can be called a Substantive Adjective. When they appear with a noun they modify it as an adjective. Study the example below that features **multus, -a, -um** (*many*) and **alius, alia, aliud** (*another, other*).

Substantive Adjective	Adjective
The army has long and short swords.	The army has long and short swords.
Many are heavy.	Many swords are long.
Multī gravēs sunt.	Multī gladii longi sunt.
All the soldiers carry a sword.	All the soldiers carry a sword.
Many carry short swords.	Many soldiers carry spears too.
Multī gladiōs parvōs portant.	Multī militēs hastās portant quoque.



A. Vocabulary:

1. aureus	9. frangō
2. anxius	10. trahō
3. aeternus	11. reddō
4. bene	12. quaerō
5. hic	13. vertō
6. territus	14. certē
7. noster	15. paulus
8. multus	16. territus

B. Chant: Give the endings (both masculine and neuter).

	Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular	Nom.	hic (this)	haec	hoc
Plural				
	Nom.	hī (these)	hae	haec

C. Grammar:

Demonstrative pronouns _____ or _____ a person or thing.

The sailors prepare to enter a new port and re-supply the ship.

1. Magister stetit et dēclārāvit nautīs: “Quaerēbāmus portum multōs diēs. Per¹ hoc iter spem nōn perdidistis sed fortēs erātis.
2. Deinde magister ad insulam vertit et dīxit, “Nunc portum invēnimus! Certē com-
meātum in hāc portū inveniēmus.”
3. Multī nautārum verba magistrī laudāvērunt. “Dīcis bene,” ūnus nauta dīxit.
4. Sed secundus nauta dīxit, “Timeō mālum² infirmum³. Mālus noster (our) nōn fortis
est. Cupiō quaerere novum mālum in portū.”
5. “Novum mālum inveniēmus!” magister clāmāvit.

¹ *per* with the accusative can mean “through” or “during”

² *mālus, -i*: mast of a ship

³ *infirmus, -a, -um*: weak, feeble



Demonstrative Adjectives: Matching Exercise

The column on the left contains a sentence with a demonstrative adjective. Match each sentence in the left column with correct translation in the right column.

Haec nāvis magna est.	Don't trust in this ship.
Hī nautae magistrum fortem habent.	This rock is big.
Hī virī ūnam nāvem aedificābunt.	This island is small.
Nolite crēdere huic nāvī.*	This ship is big.
Nolite crēdere huic magistrō.*	These sailors have a brave captain.
Haec īnsula parva est.	I am not able to break this rock.
Hoc saxum magnum est.	These men will build one ship.
Frangere hoc saxum nōn possum.	Don't trust in this captain.
Hunc locum quaerēbāmus.	I know this captain.
Pecūniam huic virō dat.	We were sailing with this captain.
Hunc magistrum sciō.	They live in this house.
Hōc magistrō nāvigābāmus.	We were seeking this place.
Habitant in hāc casā.	He gives the money to this man.

* Crēdō, crēdere takes an indirect object in the dative. Accusative case may also be used with crēdō. Generally speaking: crēdō takes dative of person or accusative of thing.



A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
VERBS	
frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum	
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum	
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum	
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum	
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	
ADVERBS	
certē	
bene	
PRONOUNS	
hic, haec, hoc	
multus, multa, multum	
noster, nostra, nostrum	
ADJECTIVES	
territus, territa, territum	
aureus, aurea, aureum	
anxius, anxia, anxium	
aeternus, aeterna, aeternum	
paulus, paula, paulum	

B. Chant:

	Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular	Nom.	hic (this)	haec	hoc
Plural	Nom.	hī (these)	hae	haec

C. Grammar:

What is the role of a demonstrative pronoun?

Chapter 27

Unit 6

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant: Demonstrative Pronoun, ille, illa, illud (*that, those*)

Singular	Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Nom.	ille (that)	illa	illud
	Gen.	illius (of that)	illius	illius
	Dat.	illī (to, for that)	illī	illī
	Acc.	illum (that)	illam	illud
	Abl.	illō (by, with, from that)	illā	illō
Plural				
	Nom.	illī (those)	illae	illa
	Gen.	illōrum (of those)	illārum	illōrum
	Dat.	illis (to, for those)	illis	illis
	Acc.	illōs (those)	illās	illa
	Abl.	illis (by, with, from those)	illis	illis

B. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositum	to put in, on
ascendō, ascendere, ascendi, ascēsum	to mount, ascend, go up
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum	to touch
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum	to rule, guide, direct
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum	to divide
revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum	to turn back, return
prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum	to go ahead, proceed
resistō, resistere, resistitī	to stand still, resist (with dat.) to be opposed to, resist, to reply to
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum	to play
metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum	to fear, be afraid, be afraid of

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	ENGLISH
meus, mea, meum	my
tuus, tua, tuum	your (singular)
suus, sua, suum ¹	his own, her own, their own
noster, nostra, nostrum	our
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (plural)

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
centum	hundred
mille ²	thousand
salveō, salvēre	to be well
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum	to owe
valeō, valēre, valuī, valītum	be strong, be well

Possessive Adjectives

The possessive adjectives all decline like **bonus, -a, -um**. They always take the gender from the object they modify, not the subject or the noun they refer back to (the antecedent).

For example:

John said, "The dog walked into my house."

Johannes dixit, "Canis in casam meam ambulāvit."

Even though **Johannes** is masculine, we use **meam** (feminine form) to modify **casam**, since **casam** is feminine.

Julia said, "Did you find my book?"

Jūlia dixit, "Invēnistīne librum meum?"

Even though Julia is feminine, we use **meum** (masculine form) to modify **librum**, since **librum** is masculine.

¹ **suus, sua, suum** is a *reflexive* possessive adjective because it reflects back on the subject, e.g. He sees his own hand/Videt **manum suum**. Note as well that **suus, sua, suum** can be either singular and plural.

² Remember, like most other cardinal numbers, **centum** and **mille** don't decline.

The plural of **mille** (**milia**=thousands) does decline, however.

The words for *that* are **ille, illa, illud** (see the chart on the memory page).

Look at the following sentences and see how demonstrative pronouns are used in English and Latin. After each Latin translation the case, number and gender are given for the word (which will be a form of **hic, haec, hoc** or **ille, illa, illud**) in bold letters.

ENGLISH	LATIN
This is a book.	Hic liber est. (M/ S/ N)
That is a book.	Ille liber est. (M/ S/ N)
This is the country of Italy.	Haec patria Ī taliae est. (F/ S/ N)
That is the city of Rome.	Illa urbs Rōmae est. (F/ S/ N)
Those boys are Roman.	Illī puerī Rōmānī sunt. (M/ P/ N)
Those girls are pretty.	Illae puellae pulchrae sunt. (F/ P/ N)
This man is alone	Hic vir sōlus est. (M/ S/ N)
That woman is late.	Illa fēmina tarda est. (F/ S/ N)
I see those trees.	Videō illās arborēs. (F/ P/ Acc)
I see them too.	Videō illās quoque. (F/ P/ Acc)
Do you see these flowers?	Vidēsne hōs florēs? (M/ P/ Acc)
I will fight with this sword.	Hōc gladiō pugnābō. (M/ S/ Abl)
I touch this flower.	Hunc flōrem tangō. (M/ S/ Acc)
I will walk to school with this friend.	Cum hāc amicā ad lūdum ambulābō. (F/ S/ Abl)
He gives this book to that boy.	Dat hunc librum illī puerō. (M/ S/ Acc, M/ S/ D)
He gives this star to that girl.	Dat hanc stellam illae puellae. (F/ S/ Acc, F/ S/ D)
The book of that man is large.	Liber illius virī magnus est. (M/ S/ G)
That man is just.	Ille iūstus est / Ille vir iūstus est. (M/ S/ N)
That woman is last.	Illa postera est / Illa fēmina postera est. (F/ S/ N)
He lives in that city.	In illā urbe vivit. (F/ S/ Abl)
I proceed to this city.	Ad hanc urbem prōcēdō. (F/ S/ Acc)

Ille, Illa for *he* and *she*

The Romans often would use **ille** by itself as an emphatic pronoun as well (be very careful not to confuse demonstratives with personal pronouns). That is to say that they would use **ille** to mean *he* or *that one* (who was a male), or they would use the feminine form of **illa** by itself to mean *she* or *that one* (who was a female). Study the following examples:

Is iūstus est.	<i>He is just.</i>
Ille iūstus est.	<i>That one is just. He is just.</i>
Ea tarda est.	<i>She is late.</i>
Illa tarda est.	<i>That one is late. She is late.</i>

A. Vocabulary:

1. ascendō

2. tangō

3. meus, mea, meum

4. tuus, tua, tuum

5. suus, sua, suum

6. noster, nostra, nostrum

7. vester, vestra, vestrum

8. revertō

9. prōcēdō

10. resistō

11. lūdō

12. metuō

13. regō

14. impōnō

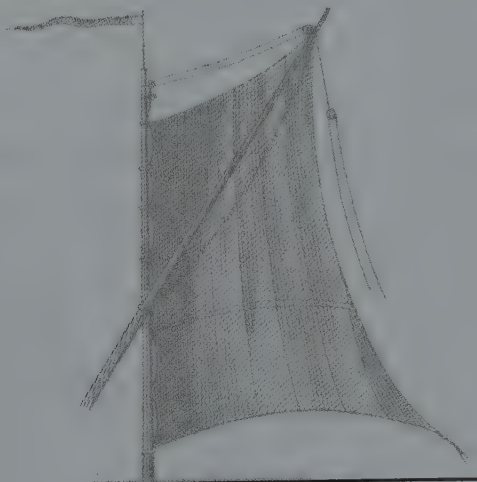
15. dīvidō

B. Chant: Ille, illa, illud: Remember to label all the boxes.

Singular	Case			
	Nom.	ille (that)	illa	illud
	Nom.	illī (those)	illae	illa

C. Grammar:

In addition to its use as a demonstrative pronoun, how else did the Romans sometimes use ille, illa, illud?



Try translating the following sentences into English. They all contain one demonstrative pronoun. Then try translating from English to Latin (in the second box).

LATIN	ENGLISH
Vidēsne hōs frātrēs? (M/ P/ Acc)	Do you see _____?
Hanc togam impōnō. (M/ S/ Acc)	I put on _____ toga (garment, robe).
Cum hāc amicā ad forum curram. (F/ S/ Abl)	I will _____ to the forum with _____ friend.
Hoc dōnum illī puerō dat. (N/ S/ A, M/ S/ D)	He gives _____ gift to _____ boy.
Hanc stellam illae puellae dat. (F/ S/ Acc, F/ S/ D)	He gives _____ star to _____ girl.
Oppidum illius virī magnus est. (N/ S/ G)	The town of _____ man is large.
Ille irātus est / Ille vir irātus est. (M/ S/ N)	_____ man is angry.
Illa laeta est / Illa fēmina laeta est. (F/ S/ N)	_____ woman is happy.
In hāc domū lūdō. (F/ S/ Abl)	I play in _____ house.
In illam viam currit. (F/ S/ Acc)	He runs into _____ road.

ENGLISH	LATIN
This is a house.	Haec domus est. (F/ S/ N)
That is a house.	_____ domus est. (F/ S/ N)
This is the country of Africa.	_____ patria Āfricae est. (F/ S/ N)
That is a road of Rome.	_____ via Rōmae est. (F/ S/ N)
Those men are dead.	_____ virī mortuī sunt. (M/ P/ N)
Those women are happy.	_____ fēminae beātae sunt. (F/ P/ N)
This settler is apt.	_____ incolus aptus est. (M/ S/ N)
That bird is beautiful.	_____ avis pulchra est. (F/ S/ N)
I see those stars.	_____ illās stellās. (F/ P/ Acc)
I see them too.	Videō _____ quoque. (F/ P/ Acc)

CHAPTER 27: TRANSLATION WORKSHEET CONT. UNIT 6

Match the Latin demonstrative pronoun with the correct English translation:

- | | |
|------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. illud | that (M/ S/ Acc) |
| 2. illōrum | that (F/ S/ Acc) |
| 3. hunc | of this (M, F, or N/ S/ G) |
| 4. haec | this (F/ S/ N or N/P/N or Acc) |
| 5. illum | that/she (F/ S/ N) |
| 6. illam | of those (M or N/ P/ G) |
| 7. huius | this (M/ S/ Acc) |
| 8. illa | it (N/ S/ N or Acc) |
| 9. illōs | by, with, from this (M, or N/ S/ Abl) |
| 10. hōc | those (M/ P/ Acc) |

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE TRANSLATION

Translate the phrase in the left column into Latin using the correct form of the possessive adjective. A few are done for you.

my house	casa mea
my town	oppidum meum
my city	urbs mea
our ship	
your dog	
his own hair	
her own house	
your (plural) city	
I see her house	Videō casam eius
I see your city	
The streets of our city	
The teeth of your dog	Dentēs canis tui
The door of my house	
I know her dog	
My dog sees your dog	
My hair is long	
He sees his own house	suam domum videt

A. New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
ascendō	
tangō	
meus, mea, meum	
tuus, tua, tuum	
suus, sua, suum	
noster, nostra, nostrum	
vester, vestra, vestrum	
revertō	
prōcēdō	
resistō	
lūdō	
metuō	
regō	
impōnō	
dīvidō	

B. Chant: ille, illa, illud: Remember to label all the boxes.

Singular	Case			
	Nom.	ille (that)	illa	illud
	Nom.	illī (those)	illae	illa

C. Grammar:

In addition to its use as a demonstrative pronoun, how else did the Romans sometimes use ille, illa, illud?

Chapter 28

Unit 6

REVIEW:

Review of Chapters 24, 25, 26 and 27

After another four weeks of study you have learned another 40 words. Check the boxes of each word you don't know. Then review those words as much as you need to in order to master them. Remember to chant using your eyes, ears and voice.

Chapter 26

- ☐ frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum _____
- ☐ reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum _____
- ☐ quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum _____
- ☐ trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum _____
- ☐ vertō, vertere, vertī, versum _____
- ☐ certē _____
- ☐ bene _____
- ☐ hic, haec, hoc _____
- ☐ multus, multa, multum _____

Chapter 27

- ☐ impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositum _____
- ☐ ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum _____
- ☐ tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum _____
- ☐ regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum _____
- ☐ dividō, dividere, divīsī, divīsum _____
- ☐ revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum _____
- ☐ prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum _____
- ☐ resistō, resistere, resistī + dat. _____
- ☐ lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum _____
- ☐ metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum _____

Chapter 24

- ☐ confirmō, -āre, confirmāvī, confirmātum _____
- ☐ liberō, -āre, liberāvī, liberātum _____
- ☐ occupō, -āre, occupāvī, occupātum _____
- ☐ superō, -āre, superāvī, superātum _____
- ☐ fuga, -ae _____
- ☐ victōria, -ae _____
- ☐ amīcitia, -ae _____

Chapter 25

- ☐ propinquus, -a, -um _____
- ☐ pūblicus, -a, -um _____
- ☐ proprius, -a, -um _____
- ☐ tardus, -a, -um _____
- ☐ ignārus, -a, -um _____
- ☐ calidus, -a, -um _____
- ☐ sacer, sacra, sacrum _____
- ☐ emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum _____
- ☐ trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum _____
- ☐ relinqūō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum _____
- ☐ intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum _____
- ☐ mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum _____



Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 24	
confirmō	confirm, confirmation, confirming
liberō	liberate, liberation
occupō	occupy, occupation, occupied, unoccupied
superō	superable, insuperable
fuga	fugitive, fugue, fugacious, fugacity
victōria	victory, victorious, Victoria
amicitia	amicable, amicability

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 25

propinquus	propinquity
pūblicus	public, publican, publish, publication, pub
proprius	property, proprietor, proprietary, proprietorship
tardus	tardy, tardiness, retard, retardant
ignārus	ignorant, ignorance, ignoramus
calidus	caldron, calorie
sacer	sacred, sacral, sacrament
emō	emporium
trādō	trade, trader, tradition, traditional
relinquō	relinquish
intellegō	intelligent, intelligentia, intellect (from <i>intellectus</i>), intellectual
mittō	mission, submit, transmit, remit, admit

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 26

frangō	fracture, fraction, fractious
reddō	
quaerō	inquire, inquiry, query
trahō	tractor, tract, traction, retract
vertō	convert, verse (words that are “turned”), introvert (a person “turned” inward), extrovert, revert, pervert, invert
certē	certain, certainly, certainty
bene	Spanish: <i>bien</i> (well) English: beneficial, beneficiary
hic, haec, hoc	
multus	multitude, multiply, multitudinous
territus	terrified, terror
aureus	aureole (radiant light around the head often seen in sacred paintings)
anxius	anxious, anxiety
aeternus	eternal, eternity
paulus	paltry (very small amount)

Write 5 sentences that use at least one of the derivatives above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 27

impōnō	impose (to make something happen by force), impostor (one who pretends to be someone or something that he is not) imposition (the act of imposing)
ascendō	ascend , ascension , ascent
tangō	tangible (capable of being felt or touched), tangent , tangential , tactile (perceptible by touch), tact (a keen sense of what to do or say)
regō	regal (relating to a king), reign , regime (a governmental system), regimen (a systematic course of therapy), regiment , regent (one who rules or reigns), regicide (the killing of a king)
dīvidō	divide , division (the act of dividing), divisive (creating disunity)
revertō	revert (to turn back, come back), reverse (to turn completely about in position of direction), reversal (a change or overthrowing), reversion (the act or process of returning)
prōcēdō	proceed , procession , (a continuous forward movement), process (something going on)
resistō	resist , resistance
lūdō	ludicrous (some thing laughable, absurd, silly and childish—child's play)
metuō	meticulous (marked by extreme or excessive care; careful)

Write 5 sentences that use at least one of the derivatives above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The sailors looked for a new port.
2. The sailors were brave through the journey.
3. The captain praised all the brave sailors.
4. The mast of the ship was weak.
5. "We will find a new mast," shouted the captain.
6. They found a new port and carried supplies onto the ship.

Latin to English

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Trēs puellae in viā pilā* lūdēbant.
2. Ūna ex puellis dīxit, "Nōn cupiō pilā lūdere."
3. Secunda puella dīxit, "Nōs pilā lūdere cupimus."
4. "Pila mea est," dīxit puella prīma. "Ībō domum."
5. Puellae clāmāvērunt, "Manē et lūde!"
6. Sed puella prīma revertit et prōcessit domum suam.

* *pila*, -ae: ball

Chapter 29

Unit 7

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chants and New Vocabulary:

Correlative Adverbs of Place

Type:	Ending	Demonstrative (Near)	Demonstrative (Far)	
			(over there)	(by you)
stationary location	-īc	<i>hīc</i>	<i>illīc</i>	<i>istīc</i>
		here	there	
direction toward	-ūc	<i>hūc</i>	<i>illūc</i>	<i>istūc</i>
		hither (to here)	thither (to there)	
direction away	-īnc	<i>hīnc</i>	<i>illīnc</i>	<i>istīnc</i>
		hence (from here)	thence (from there)	
near	-āc	<i>hāc</i>	<i>illāc (illā)</i>	<i>istāc (istā)</i>
		by this way	by that way	

Correlative Adverbs of Time and Degree

Type:	Ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
frequency (number of times)	-tiēns	quotiēns	aliquotiēns	totiēns
		(as often as, how often?)	(some number of times)	(so often)
quantity (amount)	-am/ -antum	quam	aliquantum	tam
		(as much as, how much?)	(somewhat)	(so much)

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
littera, -ae	letter
lūna, -ae	moon
luxuria, -ae	luxury, extravagance
memoria, -ae	memory
opera, -ae	effort, services



Adverbs

I am sure that you remember what an **adverb** does in a sentence—it **helps describe** (modifies) a verb (or adjective or another adverb)! Just as an adjective modifies a noun, an adverb modifies a verb. Remember that adjectives answer the questions “Which one, what kind, how many?” An adverb answers questions too—mostly about verbs. Let’s take the verb **ambulō, ambulāre** (to walk). A person can walk in many ways (*how* did he walk?), many places (*where* did he walk?) and at different times (*when* did he walk?). For example, look at the following sentence:

Marcus often (*when*) walked quickly (*how*) here (*where*).

Often tells us something about the when Marcus walked—he walked *often*.

Quickly tells us something about how Marcus walked—he walked *quickly*.

Here tells us something about where Marcus walked—he walked *here*.

So... adverbs answer the questions, “**How, where, when?**”

Correlative Adverbs

This week’s chants and vocabulary consists of two tables of “**correlative**” adverbs.

Correlative adverbs are adverbs that **relate** to each other in both form and meaning. Did you notice how the first list is similar to the demonstrative adjectives you learned last year and reviewed in the last two weeks? The prefixes are similar to the demonstrative adjective and the endings (in this case), tell us **where**.

Endings

TYPE:	ENDING
stationary location	-īc
direction toward	-ūc
direction away	-inc
near	-āc

Prefixes

Type:	Demonstrative (Near)	Demonstrative (Far)	
		(over there)	(by you)
stationary location	<i>h-</i>	<i>ill-</i>	<i>ist-</i>
	(here)	(there)	

A similar sort of pattern can be seen when comparing certain relative, indefinite and demonstrative adverbs. Look, for instance, at the starting letters of the adverbs in this week's other chant:

Type:	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
prefix	qu-	aliqu-	t-

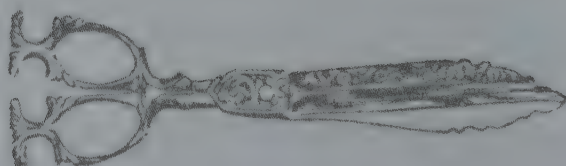


A. Vocabulary:

- | | |
|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <u>hīc</u> | 13. <u>quotiēns</u> |
| 2. <u>illīc</u> | 14. <u>aliquotiēns</u> |
| 3. <u>istīc</u> | 15. <u>totiēns</u> |
| 4. <u>hūc</u> | 16. <u>quam</u> |
| 5. <u>illūc</u> | 17. <u>aliquantum</u> |
| 6. <u>istūc</u> | 18. <u>tam</u> |
| 7. <u>hīnc</u> | 19. <u>littera</u> |
| 8. <u>illīnc</u> | 20. <u>opera</u> |
| 9. <u>istīnc</u> | 21. <u>lūna</u> |
| 10. <u>hāc</u> | 22. <u>memoria</u> |
| 11. <u>illāc</u> | 23. <u>luxuria</u> |
| 12. <u>istāc</u> | |

B. Chants: Give the forms for both of this week's chants. Remember to label the boxes.

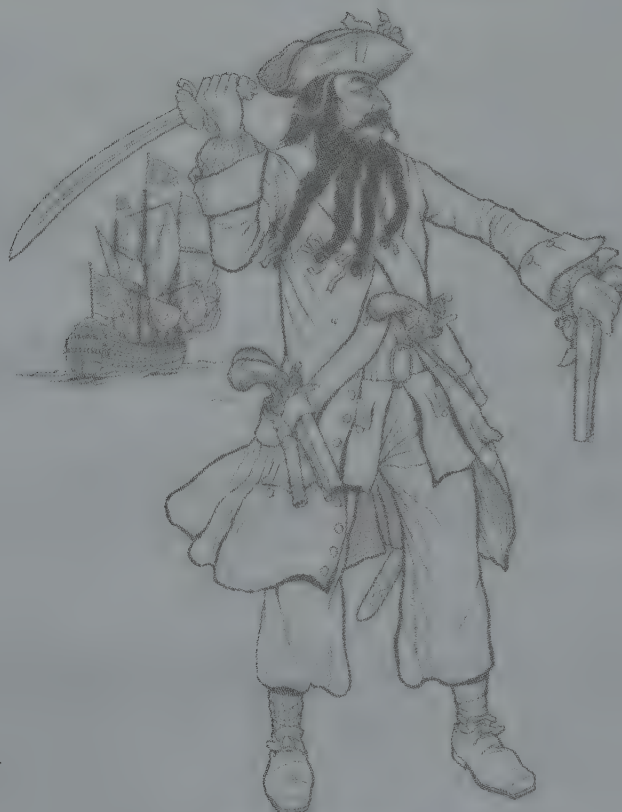
CORRELATIVE ADVERBS OF PLACE



CORRELATIVE ADVERBS OF TIME AND DEGREE

C. Grammar: Give the ending segment for each of the four directions from this week's correlative table (the first is given for you).

location	direction toward	direction away	proximity (near)
-ic			



Study the column on the left, and then translate the sentences in the column on the right.

Monumentum magnum hīc stat.

A great monument stands here.

Suntne monumenta multa in Ītaliā?

Are there many monuments in Italy?

Ita vērō, multa monumenta illīc sunt.

Yes, many monuments are there.

Vēnī hūc et vīdī monumentum
maximum.

*I came here and saw the greatest
monument.*

Ībō illūc et vidēbō Circum Maximum.

*I will go there and will see the Circus
Maximus.*

Hinc ad Hispāniam ībis?

Will you go from here to Spain?

Ita vērō, tunc illinc ībō ad Hispaniam.

Yes, then I will go from there to Spain.

Quotiēns Rōmam vīsītās?

How often do you visit Rome?

Vīsītō Rōmam aliquotiēns quotannīs.

I visit Rome a number of times every year.

Quam tempus habēs?

*How much time do you have? How do you
have time?*

Aedificium pulchrum hīc stat.

Suntne aedificia pulchra in
Germaniā?

Pauca aedificia pulchra illīc sunt.

Ambulāvī hūc cum amīcīs meīs.

Amīcī meī vīsītābunt illūc et
spectābunt aedificia.

Hinc revertent ad casam.

Postquam dormiō, tunc* illinc ībō.

Quotiēns dormīs hīc?

Dormiō hīc totiēns.

Quam somnia habēs?

Scouting out an enemy fort.

1. Lēgātus et mīlitēs suī vīdērunt castra hostium.
2. Mīles dīxit, “Videō¹ castra illīc!”
3. Lēgātus mīlitī dīxit, “Ambulā illūc. Nōs manēbimus hīc. Spectā* super moenia castrōrum, tunc² venī hūc.”
4. Aliī mīlitēs mānsērunt. Tandem socius eōrum ad eōs cucurrit. Lēgātus clāmāvit, “Venit hūc! Hostēs quoque veniunt hūc!”
5. “Venīte virī,” lēgātus dīxit, “currite illūc!”
6. Lēgātus viam parvam spectāvit. “Currite hāc!” clāmāvit.

¹ What is the difference between *videō* and *spectō*?

² tunc: then, next (a synonym of *tum* and *deinde*)

A. New Vocabulary and Chants:
More Place and Motion Correlative Adverbs

Type:	Ending	Demonstrative (Near)	Demonstrative (Far)	
			(over there)	(by you)
stationary location				
direction toward				
direction away				
near				

Frequency and Quantity Correlative Adverbs

Type:	Ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
frequency (number of times)				
quantity (amount)				

B. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
littera, -ae	
lūna, -ae	
luxuria, -ae	
memoria, -ae	
opera, -ae	

C. Grammar: Give the ending segment for each of the four directions from this week's correlative table.

location	direction toward	direction away	proximity (near)



Chapter 30

Unit 7

MEMORY PAGE:

A. Chant and New Vocabulary:

Correlative Adverbs of Place

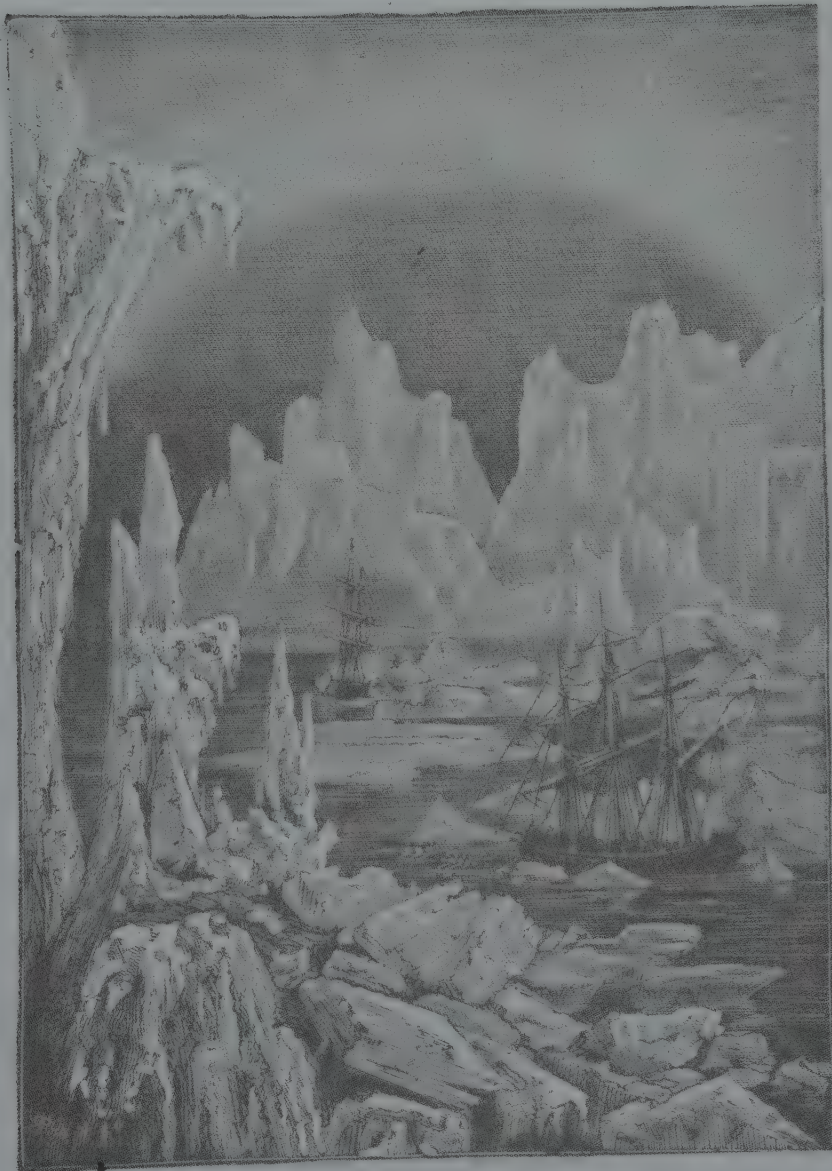
Type:	vowel ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
stationary location	<i>i</i>	<i>ubī</i>	<i>alicubī</i>	<i>ibī</i>
		where, where?	somewhere	there
direction toward	<i>ō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>aliquō</i>	<i>eō</i>
		whither/ whither? (to where)	to somewhere	thither (to there)
direction away	<i>e</i>	<i>unde</i>	<i>alicunde</i>	<i>inde</i>
		whence/ whence? (from where)	from some-where	thence (from there)
proximity (near)	<i>ā</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>aliquā</i>	<i>eā</i>
		by what way/ by what way?	(by some way)	(by that way)

B. More New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
TIME ADVERBS	
tum	then, next
quandō	when? (question)
aliquandō	some time
nunc	now
tunc	then, next
OTHER ADVERBS	
celeriter	swiftly
fortiter	bravely

C. Review Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
flamma, -ae	flame
fōrma, -ae	shape, beauty
grātia, -ae	thanks
hōra, -ae	hour
lingua, -ae	tongue, language



More Correlative Adverbs

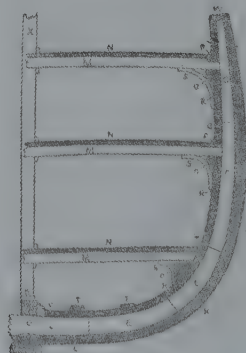
Notice that this week's chant contains some more correlative adverbs. The table contains **interrogative adverbs** (adverbs which ask a question) and **indefinite adverbs** (adverbs which refer to something that is unknown or, of course, indefinite) by adding the prefix "ali-" or "alic-." The table also includes **demonstrative adverbs** that "show" (from *dēmōnstrō*) where the action of a verb is taking place. Since all of these words are adverbs, they will modify verbs: **Interrogative adverbs** ask how a verb's action is performed (Where does he walk?/*Ubī ambulat?*). **Indefinite adverbs** describe the vague, unknown or undefined way a verb's action is performed (He walks somewhere/*Ambulat alicubī*). **Demonstrative adverbs** show where the action of a verb is performed (He walks there/*Ambulat ibi*).

Note that you learned some demonstrative adverbs last week: *illīc, illūc, illinc, illāc* (all derived from *ille, illa, illud*) and you have learned some additional demonstrative adverbs this week: *ibi, eō, inde, ea*. Don't be confused—they are synonyms.

Notice also that the adverbs which refer to a specific location end in an "i," the ones which refer to a direction toward end in an "o," the ones which refer to a direction away end in an "e," and those which refer to location near something else end in an "a." Isn't that neat! That's why when you chant through this week's chant, each row rhymes. Here's a table to help you remember this rule:

Location	Direction Toward	Direction Away	Proximity (near)
i	ō	e	ā

Notice that many of last week's correlatives had a very similar pattern, with a "qu-" for the interrogative and the relative, an "ali-" for the indefinite and a "t-" for the demonstrative.



A. Vocabulary:

1. <u>ubī</u>	11. <u>aliquā</u>
2. <u>alicubī</u>	12. <u>eā</u>
3. <u>ibi</u>	13. <u>tum</u>
4. <u>quō</u>	14. <u>quandō</u>
5. <u>aliquō</u>	15. <u>aliquandō</u>
6. <u>eō</u>	16. <u>nunc</u>
7. <u>unde</u>	17. <u>tunc</u>
8. <u>alicunde</u>	18. <u>celeriter</u>
9. <u>inde</u>	19. <u>fortiter</u>
10. <u>quā</u>	

B. Chant: Give the chant for the correlative adverbs on this week's chant. (Don't worry about the meaning this time.) Remember to label the boxes.

C. Grammar: List the ending vowel for these four kinds of correlative adverbs.

Location	Direction Toward	Direction Away	Proximity (near)

Study the column on the left, and then translate the sentences in the column on the right.

Ubī Rōma est?

Where is Rome?

Rōma alicubī prope fluvium est.

Rome is somewhere near a river.

Imperātor ibi vīvit.

The emperor lives there.

Quō exercitus contendit?

Where is the army marching to?

Exercitus aliquō in
Germāniā contendit.

*The army marches to
somewhere in Germany.*

Unde hic exercitus vēnit?

From where did this army come?

Is alicunde iuxtā Venusiam vēnit.

It came from somewhere next to Venusia.

Amīcus meus, Marcus, inde vēnit.

My friend, Marcus, came from there.

Nunc cupiō ire ad Venusiam.

Now I want to go to Venusia.

Postquam (after) Venusiam vīsītō tunc
linguam novam sciam.

*After I visit Venusia, then I will
know a new language.*

Ubī casa tua est?

Casa mea prope forum est.

Cum tribus sorōribus ibi vīvō.

Quō pater tuus it?

Pater meus aliquō in forō it.

Unde pater tuus vēnit?

Is alicunde trāns fluvium vēnit.

Herī, soror mea inde ambulāvit.

Nunc nāvigō in Tibere.

Postquam in Tibere nāvigō, tunc in
rīpā dormiam.

CHAPTER 30: TRANSLATION WORKSHEET CONT. UNIT 7

Translate the following sentences into Latin. Each sentence contains a correlative from this chapter. The first two are done for you.

Where does Mark live? *Ubi Marcus vivit?*

Mark lives somewhere near Rome. *Marcus alicubi prope Rōmam vivit.*

Julie lives there too.

Where is Mark walking to?

He is walking to somewhere next to the forum.

I want to walk there with him.

From where did John come?

He came from somewhere in Germany.

I know a man from there.

By which way did John come?

He came by some way through Italy.

Mark came by that way too.



Correlatives in English

Aren't these word relationships kind of neat? Of course English has a similar group of words with similar types of relationships, in case you haven't noticed. For an extra activity, try filling in a table of "English correlatives" (a few are done for you). Here are three hints:

1. Most of them are listed as meanings for the Latin words in this chapter.
2. The motion toward and motion away ones are considered somewhat archaic (old fashioned).
3. The proximate (near) time adverb is the only one that doesn't fit the pattern.

Type:	Relative/ Interrogative	Demonstrative	
		Proximate (Near)	Distant (Far)
stationary location	where/where?		there
direction toward			
direction away			
time	when/when?		

Now notice that each of these words really has two parts, a beginning consonant or pair of consonants and a 2-5 letter ending. Can you identify them in the charts below?

Beginning Consonants:

Type:	Relative/ Interrogative	Demonstrative	
		Proximate (Near)	Distant (Far)
stationary location	wh		

Endings:

Type:	Ending
stationary location	ere
direction toward	
direction away	
time	

A. Chant and New Vocabulary:

Correlative Adverbs: Place and Motion

Type:	vowel ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
stationary location				
direction toward				
direction away				
proximity (near)				

B. More New Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
TIME ADVERBS	
tum	
quandō	
aliquandō	
nunc	
tunc	
OTHER ADVERBS	
celeriter	
fortiter	

C. Review (Previous Year) Vocabulary:

LATIN	ENGLISH
flamma, -ae	
fōrma, -ae	
grātia, -ae	
hōra, -ae	
lingua, -ae	

D. Grammar: List the ending vowel for these four kinds of correlative adverbs.

Location	Direction Toward	Direction Away	Proximity (near)



Chapter 31

Unit 7

REVIEW:

Review of Chapters 29 and 30

After another two weeks of study you have learned another 23 words—all correlative adverbs and adverbs of time. We have also listed some review words from each chapter. Check the boxes of each word you don't know. Then review those words as much as you need to in order to master them. Remember to chant using your eyes, ears and voice.

Chapter 30

- ☐ ubī _____
- ☐ alicubī _____
- ☐ ibi _____
- ☐ quō _____
- ☐ aliquō _____
- ☐ eō _____
- ☐ unde _____
- ☐ alicunde _____
- ☐ inde _____
- ☐ quā _____
- ☐ aliquā _____
- ☐ eā _____
- ☐ tum _____
- ☐ quandō _____
- ☐ aliquandō _____
- ☐ nunc _____
- ☐ tunc _____
- ☐ celeriter _____
- ☐ fortiter _____

Chapter 29

- ☐ hīc _____
- ☐ illīc _____
- ☐ istīc _____
- ☐ hūc _____
- ☐ illūc _____
- ☐ istūc _____
- ☐ hīnc _____
- ☐ illīnc _____
- ☐ istīnc _____
- ☐ hāc _____
- ☐ illāc/illā _____
- ☐ istā _____
- ☐ quotiēns _____
- ☐ aliquotiēns _____
- ☐ totiēns _____
- ☐ quam _____
- ☐ aliquantum _____
- ☐ tam _____
- ☐ littera _____
- ☐ opera _____
- ☐ lūna _____
- ☐ memoria _____
- ☐ luxuria _____



Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 29	
quotiēns	quotient (the number resulting from the division of one number by another). From <i>quotus</i> (how many): quote , quotation , quota (a proportional part or share). <i>Quot</i> + <i>diēs</i> = <i>quotīdiē</i> (everyday) thus quotidian (everyday). <i>Quotannīs</i> means every year.
aliquotiēns	From <i>alius</i> (other) + <i>quot</i> (how many) = the English word aliquot (contained the exact number of times in another).
littera	letter , literal , literate , illiterate , literature , alliteration (the repetition of initial consonant sounds in two or more neighboring words or syllables, i.e., <u>w</u> ild and <u>w</u> oolly). French: <i>belles lettres</i> (literally, beautiful or fine letters; literature that is an end in itself and not practical or purely informative).
opera	operant , operative , operable , inoperable , operational , operate , operation , operator
lūna	lunar , lunar eclipse , lunate (shaped like a crescent), lunatic , lunacy , lunation (period of time between two successive new moons—about 29 days and 13 hours).
memoria	memorable , memorial (serving to preserve remembrance), Memorial Day , memoir (a narrative composed from personal experience), immemorial (extending beyond the reach of memory), memory , memorandum , memorabilia (things remarkable and worthy of remembrance), memento (something that serves to warn or remind), memo , memorize .
luxuria	luxury , luxurious , luxuriant , luxuriate

Write 2 Sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____

Working with Derivatives

Look up words you do not know in a dictionary.

CHAPTER 30	
quandō	Spanish: <i>cuándo</i> (when?)
celeriter	celerity (rapidity of motion; swiftness).
fortiter	fortiter (strongly, bravely) is derived from <i>fortis</i> , <i>forte</i> (strong, powerful, brave, courageous). From <i>fortis</i> , <i>forte</i> come a host of English derivatives: forte (loudly, powerfully—used as a directive in music; one's strong point); fort , fortification , fortify , fortitude (strength of mind); fortress .

Write 5 sentences using derivatives from the list above.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

TRANSLATION WORKSHEET

(This worksheet follows Translation Worksheet 2 from Chapter 29)

The lieutenant gives account to his general.

1. Imperātor lēgātum vocāvit. “Quid accidit¹?” imperātor rogāvit.
2. Lēgātus dīxit, “Invēnimus castra hostium. Ūnum mīlitem mīsī ad moenia castrōrum. Is super moenia spectāvit. Tunc, hostēs eum vīdērunt et cucurrit illinc.
3. Imperātor rogāvit, “Quotiēns mīlitēs in castra hostium mīsistī?
4. “Aliquotiēns ūnum mīlitem mīsī,” lēgātus respondit.
5. “Quam lēgātus cupis manēre?” imperātor rogāvit.
6. “Lēgātus tam cupiō manēre ut omnia rogēs faciam².
7. “Tunc mīlitem solum (sole, solitary) in castra hostium nōlīte³ mittere.”

¹ quid accidit: *What happened?*

² ut omnia rogēs faciam: *that everything you ask I will do.* This is a construction you will learn later—*ut* + the subjunctive mood (rogēs) expresses result or consequence.

³ nōlīte: *be unwilling*; always followed by the infinitive.
Be unwilling to send = do not send.

English to Latin

Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The sailors sailed from island to island, from here to there.
2. They sailed from there and searched for a new port.
3. They sailed a number of times but did not find a new port.
4. They were often sick and weary.
5. Where will the sailors find another island? To where will they sail?
6. At last they did find a new island and a new port. There they carried many new supplies onto their ship.
7. They sailed from there to their home.

Chapter 32

Unit 7

END OF BOOK REVIEW:

REVIEW OF NOUNS

Congratulations! You have finished 31 weeks of Latin study. You have learned about 240 new Latin words! In this last review chapter, we will give you another chance to show that you have mastered the Latin you have studied for the last 31 weeks.

We will start with a review of nouns. This year you have studied **all 5 kinds of Latin nouns**—1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th declension nouns. You probably remember that the **1st declension** is used for feminine nouns and that the **2nd declension** is used for masculine and sometimes neuter nouns. You also should remember that the **3rd declension** can be used for masculine, feminine and neuter nouns. It can even be used for common nouns—nouns that can be either masculine or feminine! The **4th declension** is mostly a masculine declension with two important exceptions that are feminine: **manus** and **domus**. The **5th declension** is mostly feminine except for **diēs**, which is masculine. You should be able to easily complete the boxes below. To check your work, turn to the noun charts in the reference section of your book.

Singular	Case	1 st Declension, feminine	Singular	Case	2 nd Declension, masculine
	Nom.	mēnsa (table)		Nom.	lūdus (school)
	Gen.	mēnsae (of the table)		Gen.	lūdī (of the school)
	Dat.	_____ (to, for the table)		Dat.	_____ (to, for the school)
	Acc.	_____ (table)		Acc.	_____ (school)
	Abl.	mēnsā (by, with, from table)		Abl.	lūdō (by, with, from school)
Plural			Plural		
	Nom.	mēnsae (tables)		Nom.	lūdī (schools)
	Gen.	_____ (of the tables)		Gen.	lūdōrum (of the schools)
	Dat.	mēnsīs (to, for the tables)		Dat.	_____ (to, for the schools)
	Acc.	_____ (tables)		Acc.	_____ (schools)
	Abl.	_____ (by, with, from tables)		Abl.	_____ (by, with, from schools)

Singular	Case	2 nd Declension, neuter
	Nom.	dōnum (gift)
	Gen.	dōnī (of the gift)
	Dat.	(to, for the gift)
	Acc.	(gift)
	Abl.	dōnō (by, with, from gift)
Plural	Nom.	dōna (gifts)
	Gen.	dōnōrum (of the gifts)
	Dat.	(to, for the gifts)
	Acc.	dōna (gifts)
	Abl.	(by, with, from gifts)

3rd Declension Neuter Feminine

Singular	Case	3 rd Declension, feminine
	Nom.	māter (mother)
	Gen.	mātris (of the mother)
	Dat.	(to, for the mother)
	Acc.	(mother)
	Abl.	mātre (by, with, from mother)
Plural	Nom.	mātrēs (mothers)
	Gen.	mātrum (of the mothers)
	Dat.	mātribus (to, for the mothers)
	Acc.	(mothers)
	Abl.	(by, with, from mothers)

3rd Declension I-Stem Neuter

Singular	Case	3 rd Declension, neuter I-Stem
	Nom.	mare (sea)
	Gen.	maris (of the sea)
	Dat.	(to, for the sea)
	Acc.	mare (sea)
	Abl.	marī (by, with, from sea)
Plural	Nom.	maria (seas)
	Gen.	(of the seas)
	Dat.	maribus (to, for the seas)
	Acc.	(seas)
	Abl.	(by, with, from seas)

Singular	Case	3 rd Declension, masculine
	Nom.	rēx (king)
	Gen.	rēgis (of the king)
	Dat.	(to, for the king)
	Acc.	(king)
	Abl.	rēge (by, with, from gift)
Plural	Nom.	rēgēs (kings)
	Gen.	(of the kings)
	Dat.	rēgibus (to, for the kings)
	Acc.	(kings)
	Abl.	(by, with, from kings)

3rd Declension I-Stem

Singular	Case	3 rd Declension, I-Stem
	Nom.	nāvis (ship)
	Gen.	nāvis (of the ship)
	Dat.	(to, for the ship)
	Acc.	(ship)
	Abl.	nāve (by, with, from ship)
Plural	Nom.	nāvēs (ships)
	Gen.	(of the ships)
	Dat.	nāvibus (to, for the ships)
	Acc.	(ships)
	Abl.	(by, with, from ships)

Do you remember the Neuter Rule?

Any noun that is neuter will have the same endings in both the nominative and the accusative case. If we have *dōnum* in the nominative (singular), then we will have *dōnum* in the accusative (singular). If we have *dōna* in the nominative (plural), then we will have *dōna* in the accusative (plural)!

Do you remember that nouns have 3 qualities—gender, number and case? For example, *mēnsa* is feminine, singular and nominative.

Singular	Case	4th Declension, masculine
	Nom.	senātus (senator)
	Gen.	senātūs (of the senator)
	Dat.	(to, for the senator)
	Acc.	(senator)
	Abl.	senātū (by, with, from senator)
Plural	Nom.	senātūs (senators)
	Gen.	senātuum (of the senators)
	Dat.	senātibus (to, for the senators)
	Acc.	(senators)
	Abl.	(by, with, from senators)

Singular	Case	5th Declension, feminine
	Nom.	rēs (thing)
	Gen.	reī (of the thing)
	Dat.	(to, for the thing)
	Acc.	(thing)
	Abl.	rē (by, with, from thing)
Plural	Nom.	rēs (things)
	Gen.	rērum (of the things)
	Dat.	rēbus (to, for the things)
	Acc.	(things)
	Abl.	(by, with, from things)

VOCABULARY CHECK

Let's see how you do with this small test of vocabulary. It features three words from every chapter. You should be able to score at least 75% on this test. If not, keep reviewing your vocabulary. The numbers after each word tells you from what chapter the word comes.

bibō, bibere, bibī 1 _____

cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum 1 _____

convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum 1 _____

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum 2 _____

schola, -ae 2 _____

liber, librī 2 _____

brevis, breve 3 _____

commūnis, commūne 3 _____

dulcis, dulce 3 _____

celer, celeris, celere 4 _____

mortālis, mortāle 4 _____

virilis, virīle 4 _____

audāx, audācis 5 _____

ingēns, ingentis 5 _____

fēlix, fēlicis 5 _____

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum 7 _____

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum 7 _____

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum 7 _____

comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum 8

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum 8

fortūna, -ae 8

carrus, -ī 9

castellum, -ī 9

factum, -ī 9

postea 10

saepe 10

semper 10

dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītum 12

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum 12

arbor, arboris (f) 12

centuriō, centuriōnis (m) 13

flōs, flōris (m) 13

imperātor, imperātōris (m) 13

finiō, finīre, finīvī, finītum 14

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnivī, mūnītum 14

nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum 14

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum 15

conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectum 15

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum 15

agō, agere, ēgī, actum 17

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum 17

canis, canis (c) 17

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum 18

expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum 18

mōs, mōris (m) 18

casus, -ūs 20

domus, -ūs (f) 20

equitātus, -ūs 20

cursus, -ūs 21

impetus, -ūs 21

lacus, -ūs 21

aciēs, -ēī 22

diēs, -ēī (m) 22 _____
fidēs, -eī 22 _____
occupō, -āre, occupāvī, occupātum 24 _____
superō, -āre, superāvī, superātum 24 _____
fuga, -ae 24 _____
tardus, -a, -um 25 _____
ignārus, -a, -um 25 _____
calidus, -a, -um 25 _____
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum 26 _____
certē 26 _____
bene 26 _____
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum 27 _____
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum 27 _____
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum 27 _____
hīc 29 _____
hūc 29 _____
hīnc 29 _____
ubī 30 _____
unde 30 _____
quandō 30 _____



PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Do you remember what pronouns are and how they function in a sentence? A pronoun is a word that can be used in the place of a noun. Do you remember the Latin pronouns for “he,” “she” and “it?” That’s right—*is*, *ea*, *id*. These are pronouns of the 3rd person. Try and complete the boxes below. Check your work by turning to the reference section in this book.

3rd Person Pronouns

Singular	Case	M—3 rd person	F—3 rd person	N—3 rd person
	Nom.	is (he)	ea (she)	id (it)
	Gen.	eius (of him, his)	_____ (of her, hers)	eius (of it)
	Dat.	_____ (to him)	eī (to her)	eī (to it)
	Acc.	eum (him)	_____ (her)	_____ (it)
	Abl.	_____ (by, with him)	eā (by, with her)	_____ (by, with it)
Plural				
	Nom.	eī (they)	_____ (they)	ea (they)
	Gen.	eōrum (of them)	eārum (of them)	_____ (of them)
	Dat.	eīs (to them)	_____ (to them)	eīs (to them)
	Acc.	_____ (them)	eās (them)	_____ (them)
	Abl.	eīs (by, with them)	_____ (by, with them)	eīs (by, with them)

Now, do you remember the other Latin pronouns you learned this year—the words for “I,” “we,” and “you” and “you all” (plural “you”)? They are *ego*, *nōs* and *tū*, *vōs*. These are pronouns of the 1st person. Try and complete the boxes below, then check your work by turning to the reference section.

1st Person Pronouns

Singular	Case	1 st person: <i>I, me</i>	2 nd person: <i>you</i>
	Nom.	ego (I)	tū (you)
	Gen.	meī (of me)	_____ (of you)
	Dat.	_____ (to, for me)	tibi (to, for you)
	Acc.	_____ (me)	tē (you)
	Abl.	mē (by, with, from me)	_____ (by, with, from you)
Plural		<i>we</i>	<i>you (plural)</i>
	Nom.	nōs (we)	vōs (you)
	Gen.	_____ (of us)	vestrum (vestrī)* (of you)
	Dat.	_____ (to, for us)	vōbīs (to, for you)
	Acc.	_____ (us)	_____ (you)
	Abl.	nōbīs (by, with, from us)	_____ (by, with, from you)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Demonstrative pronouns are another kind of pronoun that show or point out something (from *dēmōnstrō*, *dēmōnstrāre*, I show). In English we have two demonstrative pronouns, *this* and *that*. *This* is used for things close by (this book right here) and *that* is used for things distant (that book over there). The plural of *this* is *these* (these books right here) and the plural of *that* is *those* (those books over there). Do you remember the Latin demonstrative pronouns? Try and complete the boxes below. Check your work by turning to the reference section in this book.

Singular	Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Nom.	hic (this)	haec	
	Gen.	huius (of this)		
	Dat.	huic (to, for this)		huic
	Acc.	hunc (this)	hanc	hoc
	Abl.	hōc (by, with, from this)		hōc
Plural				
	Nom.	hī (these)	hae	haec
	Gen.	_____ (of these)		hōrum
	Dat.	hīs (to, for these)		
	Acc.	hōs (these)		
	Abl.	hīs (by, with, from these)	hīs	

Singular	Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Nom.	ille (that)		illud
	Gen.	_____ (of that)	illius	
	Dat.	illī (to, for that)	illī	
	Acc.	illum (that)	illam	
	Abl.	_____ (by, with, from that)	illā	
Plural				
	Nom.	illī (those)	illae	
	Gen.	illōrum (of those)	illārum	
	Dat.	_____ (to, for those)		
	Acc.	illōs (those)		illa
	Abl.	illīs (by, with, from those)	illīs	illīs

PREPOSITIONS

Write the correct meaning for each preposition. Consult the word banks for help and review Chapters 25 and 29 of Primer A if necessary.

Prepositions that take the accusative case

ad		ob	
ante		per	
apud		post	
circā		praeter	
contrā		prope	
extrā		propter	
infrā		super	
inter		suprā	
intrā		trāns	
iuxtā		ultrā	

across, after, against, around, before, below, between, beyond, in front of, near, on account of, outside, over or above or beyond, over or above or on top of, past, through, to or toward, within, with or near

Prepositions that take the ablative case

ā or ab		prae	
cōram		prō	
cum		sine	
dē		sub	
ē or ex		tenus	
in			

before or on behalf of, in, in front of, face-to-face with, from, from or by, out of, to the extent of, under, with, without

Prepositions

Do you remember what a preposition is? *It is a part of speech that connects a noun or pronoun to the rest of the sentence.* Prepositions are usually short little words like *to, with, from, out, in, into*, and so on. In Latin, they tend to be short little words too (*ad, cum, ab, ex, in*, and so on). Review your lists of prepositions in Chapters 25 and 29 of Primer A, then translate and label the sentences below.

Prepositions with the accusative case

SN P OP V

Iūlia ad casam ambulat.

Iūlia circā forum ambulat.

Marcus et Davus extrā currunt.

Marcus post Davum ambulābat.

Marcus iuxtā forum habitat.

Iūlia trāns viam errābit.

Prepositions with the ablative case

SN P OP V

Iūlia cum Mariā ambulābat.

Iūlia in silvā cantat.

Marcus et Davus ē casā ambulābant.

Lupus in silvā ambulat.

Equus est cōram lupō.

Equus ē silvā currit.



VERBS: FORMS FOR ALL FOUR CONJUGATIONS

You have learned more verbs from the 1st and the 2nd conjugations and also learned verbs from the 3rd conjugation. You know that verbs show *action*. Certainly you remember that verbs have three qualities: *person, number and tense*—right? Do you remember what tense is? *Time!* Since tense is time, a verb's tenses tells us when the action takes place—either in the past (imperfect), present or future. Have you mastered the endings for all three tenses? Complete the boxes below to show that you have mastered these endings, then check your work in the reference section of your book.

1 st Conjugation Forms	2 nd Conjugation Forms	3 rd Conjugation Forms	3 rd /4 th Conjugation iō	4 th Conjugation
PRESENT				
1 st Conjugation	2 nd Conjugation	3 rd Conjugation	3 rd /4 th iō	4 th Conjugation
amō	videō	regō	capiō	audiō
amās	vidēs	regis	capis	audis
amat				
IMPERFECT				
1 st Conjugation	2 nd Conjugation	3 rd Conjugation	3 rd /4 th iō	4 th Conjugation
amābam				audiēbāmus
	vidēbātis	regēbātis	capiēbās	audiēbātis
amābant	vidēbant	regēbant	capiēbat	
FUTURE				
1 st Conjugation	2 nd Conjugation	3 rd Conjugation	3 rd /4 th iō	4 th Conjugation
amābō	vidēbimus	regam	capiam	
amābis		regēs	capiēs	
				audiet

Imperatives for all three conjugations

Note that to form the imperative (a command as in *amā*, “You love!”) you simply use the stem for the singular and add “te” to the stem in the plural).

Singular	amā	vidē	rege	cape	audī
Plural	amāte	vidēte	regite	capite	audite

Verbs: Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses

Continue your review of the 4 verb conjugations by filling out the boxes below, which cover the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses.

1st Conjugation Forms	2nd Conjugation Forms	3rd Conjugation Forms	3rd/4th Conjugation iō	4th Conjugation
--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------

PERFECT

1st Conjugation	2nd Conjugation	3rd Conjugation	3rd/4th iō	4th Conjugation
amāvī	vīdī	rēxī	cēpimus	
amāvistī	vīdistī	rēxistī		audīvistī
amāvit				

PLUPERFECT

1st Conjugation	2nd Conjugation	3rd Conjugation	3rd/4th iō	4th Conjugation
amāveram			cēperam	
	vīderātis	rēxerās		audīverās
amāverat	vīderant			

FUTURE PERFECT

1st Conjugation	2nd Conjugation	3rd Conjugation	3rd/4th iō	4th Conjugation
amāverō	vīderimus	rēxerō		
amāveris		rēxeris	cēperis	
				audīverint



GLOSSARY

NEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

Chapter 1

LATIN	ENGLISH
Verbs (1 st and 3 rd Declensions)	
bibō, bibere, bibī	to drink
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum	to care for
convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum	to call together, assemble
festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātum	to hurry, rush, accelerate
portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum	to carry; bring
salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum	to greet, wish well; welcome
Nouns (1 st and 2 nd Declension)	
colōnus, -ī	colonist; farmer
toga, -ae	toga (clothing)
Adjectives	
fessus, -a, -um	tired
liber, libera, liberum	free

Chapter 2

LATIN	ENGLISH
Verbs	
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum	to collect; choose; read
discō, discere, didicī	to learn
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum	to teach
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	to be eager for; study
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum	to get to know, to recognize
Nouns	
schola, -ae	school, group of followers
liber, librī	book
Special Phrases	
scholam habeō	I give a class or lecture
Adverbs	
etiam	also
nōn	not

Chapter 3

LATIN	ENGLISH
brevis, breve	short, shallow, short-lived
commūnis, commūne	shared, common
dulcis, dulce	sweet
fortis, forte	strong, brave
difficilis, difficile	difficult
facilis, facile	easy
gravis, grave	heavy, serious
levis, leve	light, fickle
nōbilis, nōbile	well-known, noble
omnis, omne	all, whole, every

Chapter 4

LATIN	ENGLISH
3-Termination Adjectives	
celer, celeris, celere	swift
ācer, ācris, ācre	sharp
2-Termination Adjectives	
mortālis, mortāle	mortal
immortālis, immortalē	immortal
incolumis, incolume	unharmed, safe
cīvilis, cīvile	civil (of citizens)
mīlitāris, mīlitāre	military (of soldiers)
puerīlis, puerile	boyish, childish (of boys)
virīlis, virile	manly (of a man)

Chapter 5

LATIN	ENGLISH
audāx, audācis	bold
ingēns, ingentis	huge
fēlix, fēlicis	happy, lucky, fruitful
īnfēlix, īnfēlicis	unhappy, unlucky, unfruitful
vetus, veteris	old, aged; long-standing
ferōx, ferōcis	fierce, warlike, wild
prūdēns, prūdentis	sensible, prudent
dīves, dīvitis	rich; costly
potēns, potentis	capable; powerful
absēns, absentis	absent
praesēns, praesentis	present
pauper, pauperis	poor

Chapter 7

LATIN	ENGLISH
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum	to exert, hasten, march
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	to turn
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum + <i>dative</i> object	to please
condō, condere, condidī, conditum	to found
lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī	to shine, be bright
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum	to hold back
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum	to bring back, report
militō, militāre	campaign, serve as a soldier
castra, -ōrum	camp
hasta, -ae	spear
scūtum, -ī	shield
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum	left

Chapter 8

LATIN	ENGLISH
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum	to get ready, to bring together, to compare
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum	to defend
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum	to hold back, prohibit
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum	to wound
fortūna, -ae	fortune
provincia, -ae	province
inopia, -ae	want, lack
summa, -ae	sum, total
tuba, -ae	trumpet

Chapter 9

LATIN	ENGLISH
2 ND Declension masculine	
carrus, -ī	wagon, cart
2 ND Declension neuter	
castellum, -ī	castle, fort
factum, -ī	act
impedimentum, -ī	hindrance
imperātum, -ī	command
maleficium, -ī	evil deed
praesidium, -ī	garrison, protection
spatium, -ī	space
tēlum, -ī	weapon

Chapter 10

LATIN	ENGLISH
crās	tomorrow
cūr?	why?
diū	for a long time
herī	yesterday
hodiē	today
iam	now, already
interim	meanwhile
male	badly
postea	afterwards
saepe	often
semper	always

Chapter 12

LATIN	ENGLISH
audiō, audīre, audiī/audīvī, auditum	to hear
dormiō, dormīre, dormiī/dormīvī, dormītum	to sleep
sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītum	to know
serviō, servīre, serviī/servīvī, servītum (+ dat.)	to be a slave to, to be obedient
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum	to come
clāmor, clāmōris (m)	noise, loud shouting
collis, collis (m, i)	hill
hiems, hiemis (f)	winter, stormy weather
arbor, arboris (f)	tree
carmen, carminis (n)	song, poem

Chapter 13

LATIN	ENGLISH
centuriō, centuriōnis (m)	centurion (commander of 100 men)
flōs, flōris (m)	flower
imperātor, imperātōris (m)	general, commander; Emperor
legiō, legiōnis (f)	legion (division of the Roman army numbering between 4,200—6,000 men)
dictātor, dictātōris (m)	dictator (ruler with absolute power)
custōs, custōdis (c)	guardian, watchman, keeper (custodian)
obses, obsidis (c)	hostage
pax, pācis (f)	peace, calm, quiet
virgō, virginis (f)	maiden, virgin, girl
virtūs, virtūtis (f)	virtue, manliness, courage

Chapter 14

LATIN	ENGLISH
adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum	to come, arrive
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum	to open, uncover
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum	to come together, assemble
fīniō, finīre, finīi/fīnīvī, finītum	to limit, restrain, end, finish
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīi/mūnīvī, mūnītum	to fortify, protect
nesciō, nescīre, nescīi/nescīvī, nescītum	to not know
pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīi/pūnīvī, pūnītum	to punish, avenge
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum	to find, discover; learn
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū	to perceive with the senses, feel, observe

Chapter 15

LATIN	ENGLISH
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum	to take, seize
conficiō, conficere, confēcī, confectum	to make, construct; accomplish; finish off
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī/cupīī, cupītum	to wish, be eager for, desire
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum	to snatch away
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum	to make, do
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum	to throw
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum	to begin, start
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum	to bring to an end, complete
raziō, rapere, rapuī, raptum	to seize and carry off, snatch
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum	to keep back, keep in reserve, take back; (mil.) retake, reoccupy

Chapter 17

LATIN	ENGLISH
agō, agere, ēgī, actum	to do, drive
custōdiō, custodire	to guard
edō, edere/esse, ēdī, ēsum	to eat
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum	to carry, wear (bellum gerere – to wage war)
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum	to raise, lift
canis, canis (c)	dog
foedus, foederis (n)	alliance, league
moenia, moenium (n, pl)	walls or fortifications (of a city)
sonus, -ī	sound, noise
statua, -ae	statue

Chapter 18

LATIN	ENGLISH
Verbs	
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum	to grow, increase
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum	to drive out
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum	to come upon, find, (meet with is a more obscure meaning)
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum	to be silent
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum	to try, test
Nouns	
mōs, mōris (m)	custom, habit; (in plural form) morals, character
nūbēs, nūbis (f)	cloud
Adjectives	
antīquus, -a, -ūm	old, ancient
senior, seniōris	older
hilaris, hilare	cheerful

Chapter 20

LATIN	ENGLISH
aditus, -ūs (m)	approach
adventus, -ūs	approach, arrival
cāsus, -ūs (m)	fall, downfall; chance, accident
domus, -ūs (f)	house
equitātus, -ūs (m)	cavalry
exercitus, -ūs (m)	army, infantry
exitus, -ūs	exit, departure; end, conclusion
manus, -ūs (f)	hand, band, troop
passus, -ūs (m)	step, stride, pace
senātus, -ūs (m)	body of elders, senate

Chapter 21

LATIN	ENGLISH
cornū, -ūs (n)	horn
genū, -ūs (n)	knee
commeātus, -ūs	passage; (military) lines of communication, supplies
conspectus, -ūs	view, sight
cursus, -ūs	running, a course
impetus, -ūs	attack, impetuosity, vehemence
lacus, -ūs	lake
magistrātus, -ūs	office, official
metus, -ūs	fear
occāsus, -ūs	falling, setting
portus, -ūs	harbor
ūsus, -ūs	use; experience; advantage

Chapter 22

LATIN	ENGLISH
5 th Declension Nouns	
aciēs, -eī	sharpness, sharp edge (cf. acer); (military) line of battle
diēs, -eī (m)	day
fidēs, -eī	faith, trust, pledge
merīdiēs, -eī (m)	midday, noon
plānitīēs, -eī	flat surface, level ground, plain
rēs, -eī	thing, matter
speciēs, -eī	view, sight; outward appearance
spēs, -eī	hope, expectation
4 th Declension Nouns	
aestus, -ūs	agitation; heat; tide
ēventus, -ūs	event, fortune, accident; result
prīncipātus, -ūs	first place; post of commander in chief; principate; origin, beginning

Chapter 24

LATIN	ENGLISH
confirmō, -āre, confirmāvī, confirmātum	to strengthen, assert
liberō, -āre, liberāvī, liberātum	to set free
occupō, -āre, occupāvī, occupātum	to seize, occupy
superō, -āre, superāvī, superātum	to overcome, surpass, defeat
fuga, -ae	flight, escape
victōria, -ae	victory
amīcitia, -ae	friendship

Chapter 25

LATIN	ENGLISH
propinquus, -a, -um	near
pūblicus, -a, -um	public
proprius, -a, -um	own, one's own
tardus, -a, -um	late
ignārus, -a, -um	ignorant, unaware; unknown
calidus, -a, -um	warm
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred, holy
emō, emere, ēmī, emptum	to buy
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum	to hand over, give up, surrender
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum	to leave behind, abandon
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum	to distinguish, understand
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	to send

Chapter 26

LATIN	ENGLISH
Verbs	
frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum	to break
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum	to give back, return, restore
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum	to seek, search for
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum	to pull, drag
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	to turn, turn around
Adverbs	
certē	certainly
bene	well
Pronouns/Adjectives	
hic, haec, hoc	this
Adjectives	
territus, territa, territum	frightened, afraid
multus, multa, multum	many
aureus, aurea, aureum	golden
anxius, anxia, anxium	worried, troubled
aeternus, aeterna, aeternum	eternal, everlasting
paulus, paula, paulum	little, small

Chapter 27

LATIN	ENGLISH
impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositum	to put in, on
ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum	to mount, ascend, go up
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum	to touch
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum	to rule, guide, direct
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum	to divide
revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum	to turn back, return
prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum	to go ahead, proceed
resistō, resistere, resistitī	to stand still, resist (with dat.) to be opposed to, resist, to reply to
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum	to play
metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum	to fear, be afraid, be afraid of

Chapter 27

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES	ENGLISH
meus, mea, meum	my
tuus, tua, tuum	your (singular)
suus, sua, suum	his, her own; their own
noster, nostra, nostrum	our
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (plural)

Chapter 29

Correlative Adverbs of Place

Type:	Ending	Demonstrative (Near)	Demonstrative (Far)	
			(over there)	(by you)
stationary location	-īc	<i>hīc</i>	<i>illīc</i>	<i>istīc</i>
		here	there	
direction toward	-ūc	<i>hūc</i>	<i>illūc</i>	<i>istūc</i>
		hither (to here)	thither (to there)	
direction away	-īnc	<i>hīnc</i>	<i>illīnc</i>	<i>istīnc</i>
		hence (from here)	thence (from there)	
near	-āc	<i>hāc</i>	<i>illāc (illā)</i>	<i>istāc (istā)</i>
		by this way	by that way	

Correlative Adverbs of Time and Degree

Type:	Ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
frequency (number of times)	<i>-tiēns</i>	quotiēns	aliquotiēns	totiēns
		(as often as, how often?)	(some number of times)	(so often)
quantity (amount)	<i>-am/ -antum</i>	quam	aliquantum	tam
		(as much as, how much?)	(somewhat)	(so much)

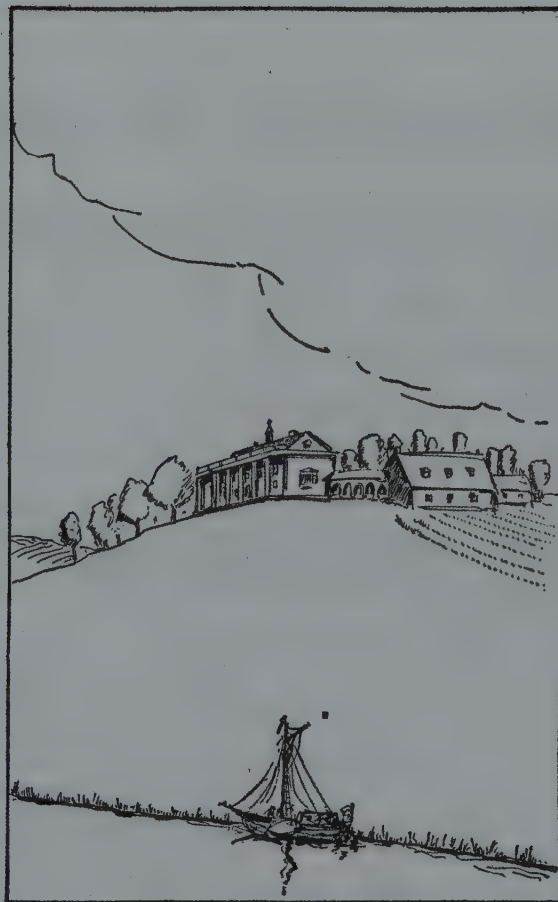
Chapter 30

Correlative Adverbs of Place

Type:	vowel ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
stationary location	<i>i</i>	<i>ubī</i>	<i>alicubī</i>	<i>ibi</i>
		where, where?	somewhere	there
direction toward	<i>ō</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>aliquō</i>	<i>eō</i>
		whither/ whither? (to where)	to somewhere	thither (to there)
direction away	<i>e</i>	<i>unde</i>	<i>alicunde</i>	<i>inde</i>
		whence/ whence? (from where)	from some- where	thence (from there)
proximity (near)	<i>ā</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>aliquā</i>	<i>eā</i>
		by what way/ by what way?	~ (by some way)	(by that way)

NEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

LATIN	ENGLISH
Time Adverbs	
tum	then, next
quandō	when? (question)
aliquandō	some time
nunc	now
tunc	then, next
Other Adverbs	
celeriter	swiftly
fortiter	bravely



GLOSSARY by CHAPTER

Review Words by Chapter

Chapter 1

LATIN	ENGLISH
aqua, -ae	water
dominus/ domina	lord, master/ lady, mistress
servus/ serva	slave (male/ female)
vir, -ī	man
fēmina, -ae	woman
magister, magistri	teacher, master

Chapter 2

LATIN	ENGLISH
rēx, rēgis (m)	king
uxor, uxōris (f)	wife
iter, itineris (n)	journey, road
fīnis, finis (m, i)	limit, boundary
mare, maris (n, i)	sea

Chapter 3

LATIN	ENGLISH
pecūnia, -ae	money
poena, -ae	penalty, punishment
rosa, -ae	rose
sententia, -ae	opinion, sentence
vīta, -ae	life

REVIEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

Chapter 4

LATIN	ENGLISH
cūra, -ae	care
culpa, -ae	fault, blame, sin
glōria, -ae	glory
angulus, -ī	angle, corner, nook
calculus, -ī	pebble

Chapter 5

LATIN	ENGLISH
adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c, i)	youth, young person
frāter, frātris (m)	brother
prīnceps, prīncipis (c)	leader, first one, prince
cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)	citizenship, state, commonwealth
soror, sorōris (f)	sister

Chapter 7

LATIN	ENGLISH
lēgātus, -ī	lieutenant
gladius, -ī	sword
dux, ducis (m)	leader
mīles, mīlitis (m)	soldier
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	send
imperō, imperāre (+ dative)	order

REVIEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

Chapter 8

LATIN	ENGLISH
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum	to have, hold
conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum	to bring together, unite
conservō, conservāre, conservāvī, conservātum	to keep, preserve
iūdex, iūdicis (m)	judge
potestās, potestātis (f)	power
auctōritas, auctōritātis (f)	influence, authority

Chapter 9

LATIN	ENGLISH
mīles, mīlitis (c)	soldier
eques, equitis (m)	horseman, knight, equestrian
hostis, hostis (c)	stranger, foreigner, enemy (of one's country)
mors, mortis (f)	death
sanguis, sanguinis (m)	blood

Chapter 12

LATIN	ENGLISH
expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātum	I expect, to expect, I expected, expected
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum	I think, to think, I thought, thought
probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum	I approve, to approve, I approved, approved
vīvus, -a, -um	living
mortuus, -a, -um	dead

REVIEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

Chapter 13

LATIN	ENGLISH
iūstus, -a, -um	just
aptus, -a, -um	suitable, proper, fitting
aliēnus, -a, -um	another's, foreign; hostile; strange
aequus, -a, -um	level, even; fair, favorable
beātus, -a, -um	happy, blessed

Chapter 14

LATIN	ENGLISH
servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum	I save, preserve
cūra, -ae	care
iniūria, -ae <i>injūria, -ae*</i>	injury, injustice
nātūra, -ae	blood relationship, birth; nature,
stella, -ae	star

Chapter 15

LATIN	ENGLISH
interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātum	to ask or question
agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātum	to drive, stir up, agitate
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum (+ dat.)	to order or command; give orders (with acc. of thing and dat. of person)
studium, -ī	zeal, study
vīnum, -ī	wine

REVIEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

Chapter 17

LATIN	ENGLISH
cūra, -ae	care
culpa, -ae	fault, blame, sin
rīpa, -ae	river bank
somnus, -ī	sleep
angulus, -ī	corner, angle
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum	I carry

Chapter 18

LATIN	ENGLISH
timeō, timēre, timuī	to fear
adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c, i)	young man, adolescent
rēx, rēgis (m)	king
prīnceps, prīncipis (c)	leader, prince
cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)	citizenship, state, commonwealth

Chapter 20

LATIN	ENGLISH
affirmō, affirmāre, affirmāvī, affirmātum (also spelled "adfirmō")	to strengthen, assert, affirm
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum	to deny
aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum	to build, erect, establish
celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātum	to visit frequently (or in large numbers), to fill, to celebrate
dēclārō, dēclārāre, dēclārāvī, dēclārātum	to declare

REVIEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

Chapter 21

LATIN	ENGLISH
dolor, dolōris (m)	pain, anguish, sorrow
timor, timōris (m)	fear
amor, amōris (m)	love
ars, artis (f)	art, skill
voluntās, voluntātis (f)	will, desire

Chapter 22

LATIN	ENGLISH
uxor, uxōris (f)	wife
vestis, vestis (f, i)	clothing, garment
lūx, lūcis (f)	light
nox, noctis (f, i)	night
dēns, dentis (m, i)	tooth

Chapter 24

LATIN	ENGLISH
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum	to call, address
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum	to give news, announce
nauta, -ae (m)	sailor
fāma, -ae	reputation, rumor
lingua, -ae	tongue, language
memoria, -ae	memory
pecūnia, -ae	money
poena, -ae	penalty, punishment

REVIEW VOCABULARY BY CHAPTER

Chapter 27

LATIN	ENGLISH
centum	hundred
mille	thousand, (mīlia - thousands)
salveō, salvēre	to be well
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum	to owe
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum	be strong, be well

Chapter 29

LATIN	ENGLISH
littera, -ae	letter
lūna, -ae	moon
luxuria, -ae	luxury, extravagance
memoria, -ae	memory
opera, -ae	effort, services

Chapter 30

LATIN	ENGLISH
flamma, -ae	flame
fōrma, -ae	shape, beauty
grātia, -ae	thanks
hōra, -ae	hour
lingua, -ae	tongue, language

REFERENCE CHARTS

I. VERB CHARTS

A. Verb Conjugations

1. Amō (1st conjugation, present tense)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	amō	amāmus
2 nd person	amās	amātis
3 rd person	amat	amant

2. Videō (2nd conjugation, present tense)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	videō	vidēmus
2 nd person	vidēs	vidētis
3 rd person	videt	vident

3. Duco (3rd conjugation, present tense)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	dūcō	dūcimus
2 nd person	dūcis	dūcitis
3 rd person	dūcit	dūcunt

4. Audiō (4th conjugation, present tense)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	audiō	audīmus
2 nd person	audīs	audītis
3 rd person	audit	audiunt

REFERENCE CHARTS:

5. Capiō (3rd conjugation "io", present tense)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	capiō	capimus
2 nd person	capis	capitis
3 rd person	capit	capiunt

6. "-am, -ēs, -et..." (3rd and 4th conjugation, future tense endings)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st person	-am	-ēmus
2 nd person	-ēs	-ētis
3 rd person	-et	-ent

B. Verb Endings

1. Present System

	PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
1 st person	-ō	-mus	-bam	-bāmus	-bō	-bimus
2 nd person	-s	-tis	-bās	-bātis	-bis	-bitis
3 rd person	-t	-nt	-bat	-bant	-bit	-bunt

2. Perfect System

	PERFECT		PLUPERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
1 st person	-ī	-imus	-eram	-erāmus	-erō	-erimus
2 nd person	-istī	-istis	-erās	-erātis	-eris	-eritis
3 rd person	-it	-ērunt	-erat	-erant	-erit	-erint

C. Irregular Verb Conjugations

1. Irregular Verb: Sum, esse

	PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
1 st person	sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
2 nd person	es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
3 rd person	est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

2. Irregular Verb: Eō, ire

	PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
	singular	plural	singular	Plural	singular	plural
1 st person	eō	īmus	ībam	ībāmus	ībō	ībimus
2 nd person	īs	ītis	ībās	ībātis	ībis	ībitis
3 rd person	it	eunt	ībat	ībant	ībit	ībunt

3. Irregular Verb: Possum, posse

	PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
1 st person	possum	possumus	poteram	poterāmus	poterō	poterimus
2 nd person	potes	potestis	poterās	poterātis	poteris	poteritis
3 rd person	potest	possunt	poterat	poterant	poterit	poterunt



REFERENCE CHARTS:

II. NOUN, ADJECTIVE AND PRONOUN CHARTS

A. Noun Endings

1. Noun Endings (1st and 2nd Declensions)

	1 st Declension		2 nd Declension masculine		2 nd Declension neuter	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nominative	-a	-ae	-us	-ī	-um	-a
Genitive	-ae	-ārum	-ī	-ōrum	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ae	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-am	-ās	-um	-ōs	-um	-a
Ablative	-ā	-īs	-ō	-īs	-ō	-īs

2. Noun Endings (3rd Declension)

	3 rd Declension		3 rd Declension Neuter		3 rd Declension I-stem		3 rd Declension Neuter, I-stem	
	S	P	S	P	S	P	S	P
N	-x	-ēs	-x	-a	-x	-ēs	-x	- <u>ia</u>
G	-is	-um	-is	-um	-is	- <u>ium</u>	-is	- <u>ium</u>
D	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus	-ī	-ibus
Acc	-em	-ēs	-x	-a	-em	-ēs	-x	- <u>ia</u>
Abl	-e	-ibus	-e	-ibus	-e	-ibus	- <u>ī</u>	-ibus

3. Noun Endings (4th and 5th Declensions)

	4 th Declension		4 th Declension Neuter		5 th Declension	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nominative	-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
Genitive	-ūs	-uum	-ūs	-uum	-eī/eī	-ērum
Dative	-uī	-ibus	-ū	-ibus	-eī/eī	-ēbus
Accusative	-um	-ūs	-ū	-ua	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-ū	-ibus	-ū	-ibus	-ē	-ēbus

REFERENCE CHARTS:

B. Adjective Endings/ Declensions

1. 1st and 2nd Declension Adjective Endings (by gender)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
Nominative	-us	-a	-um	-ī	-ae	-a
Genitive	-ī	-ae	-ī	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-ae	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs
Accusative	-um	-am	-um	-ōs	-ās	-a
Ablative	-ō	-ā	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs

2. 3rd Declension Adjectives (2-Termination)

Singular	Case	M	F	N
	Nom.	brevis		breve
	Gen.	brevis		brevis
	Dat.	brevī		brevī
	Acc.	brevem		breve
	Abl.	brevī		brevī
Plural				
	Nom.	brevēs		brevia
	Gen.	brevium		brevium
	Dat.	brevibus		brevibus
	Acc.	brevēs		brevia
	Abl.	brevibus		brevibus

3. 3rd Declension Adjectives (3-Termination)

Singular	Case	M	F	N
	Nom.	celer	celeris	celere
	Gen.	celeris	celeris	celeris
	Dat.	celerī	celerī	celerī
	Acc.	celerem	celerem	celere
	Abl.	celerī	celerī	celerī
Plural				
	Nom.	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
	Gen.	celerium	celerium	celerium
	Dat.	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus
	Acc.	celerēs	celerēs	celeria
	Abl.	celeribus	celeribus	celeribus

REFERENCE CHARTS:

3rd Declension Adjectives (1-Termination)

Singular	Case	M	F	N
	Nom.	audāx		audāx
	Gen.	audācis		audācis
	Dat.	audācī		audācī
	Acc.	audācem		audāx
	Abl.	audācī		audācī
Plural				
	Nom.	audācēs		audācia
	Gen.	audācium		audācium
	Dat.	audācibus		audācibus
	Acc.	audācēs		audācia
	Abl.	audācibus		audācibus

C. Pronoun Forms

1. 3rd Person Personal Pronouns: "is, ea, id..."

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
Nominative	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
Genitive	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dative	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
Accusative	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ablative	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

2. 1st and 2nd Person Personal Pronouns: "ego, nōs/ tū, vōs" (I, we, you)

	1 ST PERSON		2 ND PERSON	
	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nominative	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Genitive	meī	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
Dative	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Accusative	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Ablative	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

REFERENCE CHARTS:

3. 1st Person Demonstrative Pronouns: “hic, haec, hoc...” (this near me)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
Nominative	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Genitive	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dative	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Ablative	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

4. 2nd Person Demonstrative Pronouns: “iste, ista, istud...” (that near you)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
Nominative	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Genitive	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dative	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Accusative	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Ablative	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

5. 3rd Person Demonstrative Pronouns: “ille, illa, illud...” (that over there)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	(m)	(f)	(n)	(m)	(f)	(n)
Nominative	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Genitive	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Accusative	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

REFERENCE CHARTS:

III. PREPOSITION CHARTS:

A. Accusative-Only Preposition Flow Chart

PREPOSITION	MEANING	PREPOSITION	MEANING
ad	to, toward	ob	in front of
ante	before	per	through
apud	with, near	post	after
circā	around	praeter	past
contrā	against	prope	near
extrā	outside	propter	on account of
infrā	below	secundum	along
inter	between	super	over, above, beyond
intrā	within	suprā	over, above, on top of
iuxtā	near	trāns	across
		ultrā	beyond

B. Ablative-Only Preposition Flow Chart

PREPOSITION	MEANING	PREPOSITION	MEANING
ā or ab	from, by	prae	in front of
cōram	face-to-face with	prō	before, on behalf of
cum	with	sine	without
dē	from	tenus	to the extent of
ē or ex	out of		

C. Accusative or Ablative Preposition Flow Chart

PREPOSITION	MEANING WITH THE ACCUSATIVE	MEANING WITH THE ABLATIVE
in	into	in, on
sub	up to	under

REFERENCE CHARTS:

IV. NUMBER CHANTS:

A. Number chants to ten:

1. Latin/ English Cardinal Numbers

LATIN CARDINAL NUMBERS		ENGLISH CARDINAL NUMBERS	
I	ūnus, ūna, ūnum	1	one
II	duo, duae, duo	2	two
III	trēs, tria	3	three
IV	quattuor	4	four
V	quīnque	5	five
VI	sex	6	six
VII	septem	7	seven
VIII	octō	8	eight
IX	novem	9	nine
X	decem	10	ten

2. Latin/ English Ordinal Numbers

LATIN ORDINAL NUMBERS	ENGLISH ORDINAL NUMBERS
prīmus, -a, -um	first
secundus, -a, -um	second
tertius, -a, -um	third
quārtus, -a, -um	fourth
quīntus, -a, -um	fifth
sextus, -a, -um	sixth
septimus, -a, -um	seventh
octāvus, -a, -um	eighth
nōnus, -a, -um	ninth
decimus, -a, -um	tenth

REFERENCE CHARTS:

B. Number Declensions

1. Ūnus (one)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

2. Duo (two)

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

3. Trēs (three)

	Masculine and/or Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	trēs	tria
Genitive	trium	trium
Dative	tribus	tribus
Accusative	trēs	tria
Ablative	tribus	tribus

REFERENCE CHARTS:

V. CORRELATIVE CHANTS:

A. Correlative Adverbs of Place

Type:	Ending	Demonstrative (Near)	Demonstrative (Far)	
			(over there)	(by you)
stationary location	-īc	<i>hīc</i>	<i>illīc</i>	<i>istīc</i>
		here	there	
direction toward	-ūc	<i>hūc</i>	<i>illūc</i>	<i>istūc</i>
		hither (to here)	thither (to there)	
direction away	-inc	<i>hinc</i>	<i>illinc</i>	<i>istinc</i>
		hence (from here)	thence (from there)	
near	-āc	<i>hāc</i>	<i>illāc (illā)</i>	<i>istāc (istā)</i>
		by this way	by that way	

B. Correlative Adverbs of Time and Degree

Type:	Ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
frequency (number of times)	-tiēns	quotiēns	aliquotiēns	totiēns
		(as often as, how often?)	(some number of times)	(so often)
quantity (amount)	-am/ -antum	quam	aliquantum	tam
		(as much as, how much?)	(somewhat)	(so much)

REFERENCE CHARTS:

C. More Correlative Adverbs of Place

Type:	vowel ending	Relative/ Interrogative	Indefinite	Demonstrative
stationary location	i	ubī	alicubī	ibi
		where, where?	somewhere	there
direction toward	ō	quō	aliquō	eō
		whither/ whither? (to where)	to somewhere	thither (to there)
direction away	e	unde	alicunde	inde
		whence/ whence? (from where)	from some- where	thence (from there)
proximity (near)	ā	quā	aliquā	eā
		by what way/ by what way?	(by some way)	(by that way)

“The Re, Te, Ne Song” (To the tune of “Do, Re, Mi”)

Let's start at the very ending, a very strange place to start
 When you sing you begin with “Do, Re, Mi”
 But Latin verbs can end with “Re, Te, Ne”
 These three endings just happen to say: “Re, Te, Ne”...

“Re” the infinitive form of a verb
 “Te” means “you all do it now”
 “Ne” means a question's coming soon
 If you get them right please take a bow!

If you need these words today
 You'll know just what you should say
 Just remember “Re, Te, Ne”
 And you'll be a Latin star, star, star, star...!

Appendix

Famous Latin Sayings

terra firma	firm ground
vōx populi	the voice of the people
festinate lentē	hurry slowly (Augustus)
rara avis	a rare bird
ex librīs	from the books/library of
docendō, discimus	by teaching we learn
errāre hūmānum est	to err is human (Seneca)
amor vincit omnia	love conquers all
dulce et decorum est prō patria mori	it is sweet and seemly to die for one's country
ars longa, vīta brevis	art is long, life is brief (Hippocrates)
fortēs fortūna iuvat	fortune favors the brave (Terence)
quot hominēs tot sententiae	there are as many opinions as there are men
mea culpa	my fault
ad maiōrem Deī glōriam	to the greater glory of God (motto of the Society of Jesus)
cavē canem	beware of the dog
irā furor brevis est	anger is a brief madness
prō rēge, lēge et grēge	for the king, law and people
novus ordō seclōrum	a new cycle of the ages
si valēs, valeō	if you are well, I am well (common Roman opening in letters)
fāma volat	rumors fly (Virgil)
philosophia est ars vītae	philosophy is the art of life (Seneca)
rotam fortūnae nōn timent	they do not fear the wheel of fortune (Cicero)
fortūna adversa virum magnae sapientiae nōn terret	bad fortune does not frighten men of great wisdom (Horace)

APPENDIX: FAMOUS LATIN SAYINGS

fortūna est caeca	fortune is blind (Cicero)
infīnītus est numerus stultōrum	the number of fools is infinite (Ecclesiastes)
satisne sānus es?	is it not enough you are sane? (Terence)
ubi lēgēs valent, ibi populus potest valēre	when the laws are strong, there the people are able to be strong (Publilius Syrus)
nihil sub sōle novum	nothing (is) new under the sun (Ecclesiastes)
otium sine litterīs mors est	leisure without literature is death (Cicero)
glōria in altissimīs Deō et in terrā pāx in hominibus bonae voluntātis	glory to God in the highest and on earth peace among men of good will (Luke)
ratio mē dūcet, nōn fortūna	reason leads me, not fortune (Livy)
cupiditātem pecūniae glōriaeque fugite	flee the desire of money and glory (Cicero)
officium meum faciam	I will do my duty (Terence)
vīve memor mortis, fugit hōra	live mindful of death; the hour flees (Persius)
sed fugit, intereā, fugit tempus	but it flies, meanwhile, time flies (Virgil)
fāta viam invenient	fate will find a way (Virgil)
id solum est cārum mihi.	it alone is dear to me (Terence)
bene est mihi quod tibi bene est	it is well for me because it is well for you (Pliny)
vērus amīcus est alter idem	a true friend is another self (Cicero)
in prīncipiō Deus creāvit caelum et terram; et Deus creāvit hominem	in the beginning God created the heaven and the earth; and God created man (Genesis)
vīxit, dum vīxit, bene	he lived—while he lived—well (Seneca)
auribus teneō lupum	I hold a wolf by the ears (Terence)
labor omnia vincit	work conquers all things (Virgil)
varium et mūtābile semper fēmina	a woman is always fickle and changeable (Virgil)
māter omnium bonārum atrium sapientia est	the mother of every good art is wisdom (Cicero)
qui coepit, dīmīdium factī habet. incipe!	he who begins has half of the deed. Begin! (Horace)
dum vīta est, spēs est	while there is life, there is hope (Cicero)

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

LATIN	ENGLISH	PRIMER	CHAPTER
ā or ab (+abl.)	from, by, away from	A	29
abeō, abire, abiī, abitum	to go away	A	30
absēns, absentis	absent	C	5
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrum	to be away	A	30
ācer, ācris, ācre	sharp	C	4
accūsō, accūsāre, accūsāvī, accūsātum	to accuse	A	30
aciēs, -eī	sharpness, sharp edge (cf. acer); (military) line of battle	C	22
ad (+acc.)	to, toward	A	24
adeō, adire, adiī, aditum	to go to; to approach	A	30
aditus, -ūs (m)	approach	C	20
adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum	to help, aid	B	9
administrō, administrāre, administrāvī, administrātum	to help or manage	B	4
adoptō, adoptāre, adoptāvī, adoptātum	to select, adopt	B	9
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrum	to be present	A	30
adveniō, advenire, advēnī, adventum	to come, arrive	C	14
adventus, -ūs	approach, arrival	C	20
adulēscēns, adulēscētis (c, i)	youth, young person	B	19
aedificium, -ī	building	A	8
aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum	to build, erect, establish	B	22
aequus, -a, -um	equal	B	2
aestus, -ūs	agitation; heat; tide	C	22
aetās, aetātis (f)	age	B	25
affirmō, affirmāre, affirmāvī, affirmātum (also spelled "adfirmō")	to strengthen, assert, affirm	B	22
ager, agrī	field	A	14
agitō, agitāre, agitāvī, agitātum	to drive, stir up, agitate	B	4
agō, agere, ēgī, actum	to do, drive	C	17
agricola, -ae (m)	farmer	A	14

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

aliēnus, -a, -um	strange, foreign	B	2
alicubī	somewhere	C	30
alicunde	from somewhere	C	30
aliquā	by somewhere	C	30
aliquandō	sometime	C	30
aliquantum	somewhat, some amount	C	29
aliquō	to somewhere	C	30
aliquotiēns	some number of times	C	29
altus, -a, -um	high	A	27
ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum	to walk	A	8
amica, -ae	friend (female)	A	4
amicitia, -ae	friendship	C	24
amicus, -ī	friend (male)	A	6
amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum	to love	A	1
amor, amoris (m)	love	B	22
āmoveō, āmovēre, āmōvī, āmōtum	to move away	B	9
ancilla, -ae	maid-servant	A	3
angulus, -ī	angle	B	17
animal, animālis (n, i)	animal	B	30
animus, -ī	mind	A	15
annus, -ī	year	A	15
ante (+ acc.)	before	A	24
antiquus, -ī	old, ancient	C	18
aperiō, aperire, aperuī, apertum	to open, uncover	C	14
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum	to name	A	30
apud (+ acc.)	near	A	24
aptus, -a, -um	apt, fitting	B	2
aqua, -ae	water	A	1
aquārius, -ī	water-carrier	A	7
arbor, arboris (f)	tree	C	12
argentum, -ī	silver	A	16
arma, -ōrum (plural only)	arms	B	9
arō, arāre, arāvī, arātum	to plow	A	16
ars, artis (f)	art, skill	B	22
ascendō, ascendere, ascendi, ascēsum	to mount, ascend, go up	C	27

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

astrum, -ī	star	A	9
auctor, auctōris (m)	ancestor, originator, sup- porter	B	24
auctōritās, auctōritātis (f)	influence, authority	B	24
audāx, audācis	bold	C	5
audeō, audēre, ausus sum	to dare	A	21
audiō, audīre, audiī/audīvī, auditum	to hear	C	12
augeō, augēre, auxisse, auctum	to increase	A	14
aura, -ae	breeze	A	2
auris, auris (f, i)	ear	B	27
aurum, -ī	gold	A	16
auxilium, -ī	help/ helper	A	8
avis, avis (f, i)	bird	B	27
āvocō, āvocāre, āvocāvī, āvocātum	to call away	B	9
beātus, -a, -um	happy, blessed	B	2
bellum, -ī	battle	B	9
bene	well	C	26
beneficium, -ī	kindness, benefit	A	20
bibō, bibere, bibī	to drink	C	1
bonus, -a, -um	good	A	12
bracchium, -ī	arm	A	16
brevis, breve	short, shallow, short-lived	C	3
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum	to fall	B	27
caecus, -a, -um	blind	A	22
caelum, -ī	sky	A	8
calculus, -ī	pebble	B	17
calidus, -a, -um	warm, hot	C	25
campus, -ī	level area	A	15
canis, canis (c)	dog	C	17
cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātum	to sing	A	30
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum	to take, seize	C	15
capitulum, -ī	heading, chapter	A	20
capillus, -ī	hair	A	19
carmen, carminis (n)	song, poem	C	12
carrus, -ī	wagon, cart	C	9

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

cārus, -a, -um	dear	A	21
casa, -ae	house	A	20
castellum, -ī	castle, fort	C	9
castra, -ōrum (n. pl.)	camp	C	7
cāsus, -ūs (m)	fall, downfall; chance, accident	C	20
causa, -ae	cause	B	3
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum	to guard against	A	19
cavus, -ī	hole	B	17
celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātum	to visit frequently (or in large numbers), to fill, to celebrate	B	22
celer, celeris, celere	swift	C	4
celeriter	swiftly	C	30
cēna, -ae	dinner	A	2
cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātum	to dine	A	30
cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum	to estimate	A	21
centum	hundred	B	16
centuriō, centuriōnis (m)	centurion (commander of 100 men)	C	13
certē	certainly	C	26
certus, -a, -um	certain	B	2
cervus, -ī	stag, deer	B	17
cēterus, -a, -um	the other	B	2
cibus, -ī	food	A	15
circā (+ acc.)	around	A	15
cīvilis, cīvile	civil (of citizens)	C	4
cīvis, cīvis (c, i)	citizen	B	20
cīvitās, cīvitātis (f)	citizenship, state, commonwealth	B	19
clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī, clāmātum	to shout	A	7
clāmor, clāmōris (m)	noise, loud shouting (a clamor)	C	12
clārus, -a, -um	clear	A	21
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum	to think	A	16
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum	to get to know, to recognize	C	2
collis, collis (m, i)	hill	C	12

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

colloquium, -ī	conversation	A	16
collum, -ī	neck	A	9
colōnus, -ī	colonist; farmer	C	1
commeātus, -ūs	passage; (military) lines of communication, supplies	C	21
comes, comitis (c)	companion	B	30
commemorō, commemorāre, commemorāvī, commemorātum	to remember, call to mind	A	30
commūnis, commūne	shared, common	C	3
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum	to get ready, to bring together, to compare	C	8
conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum	to bring together, unite	B	24
condō, condere, condidī, conditum	to found, establish	C	7
cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectum	to make, construct; accomplish; finish off	C	15
confirmō, -āre, confirmāvī, confirmātum	to strengthen, assert	C	24
conservō, conservāre, conservāvī, conservātum	to conserve	B	16
conspectus, -ūs	view, sight	C	21
consilium, -ī	plan	A	16
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum	to exert, hasten, march	C	7
contrā (+ acc.)	against	A	24
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum	to come together, assemble	C	14
convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum	to call together, assemble	C	1
cōram (+ abl.)	face-to-face with	A	29
cornū, -ūs (n)	horn	C	21
corpus, corporis (n)	body	B	29
crās	tomorrow	C	10
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum (+ dat.)	to trust, believe	B	27
creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum	to create	A	11
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum	to grow, increase	C	18
crīmen, crīminis (n)	crime, accusation	B	29
culpa, -ae	fault, blame, sin	B	17
cum (+ abl.)	with	A	29
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī/cupīi, cupītum	to wish, be eager for, desire	C	15
cūr?	why?	C	10
cūra, -ae	care	B	3

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātum	to care for	C	1
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum	to run, hasten	B	27
cursus, -ūs	running, a course	C	21
custōdiō, custōdire, custōdī/custōdivī, custōditum	to guard	C	17
custōs, custōdis (c)	guardian, watchman, keeper (custodian)	C	13
damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātum	to condemn, punish	B	24
dē (+abl.)	from, concerning, about	A	29
dea, -ae	goddess	A	20
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum	to owe	B	16
decem	ten	B	14
decimus, -a, -um	tenth	B	15
dēclārō, dēclārāre, dēclārāvī, dēclārātum	to declare	B	22
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum	to defend	C	8
dēfessus, -a, -um	tired	A	22
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum	to demonstrate	A	7
dēns, dentis (m, i)	tooth	B	23
deus, -ī	god	A	19
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right	C	7
dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum	to speak	B	29
dictātor, dictātōris (m)	dictator (ruler with absolute power)	C	13
diēs, -ēī (m)	day	C	22
difficilis, difficile	difficult	C	2
dignus, -a, -um	worthy	A	21
discipula, -ae	student/ disciple (female)	A	4
discipulus, -ī	student/ disciplie (male)	A	6
dīves, dīvitis	rich; costly	C	5
discō, discere, didicī	to learn	C	2
diū	for a long time	C	10
dividō, dividere, divīsī, divīsum	to divide	C	27
dō, dare, dedī, datum	to give	A	1
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum	to teach	C	2
doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum	to suffer	A	19
dolor, dolōris (m)	pain, anguish, sorrow	B	22

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

domina, -ae	lady/ mistress	A	4
dominus, -ī	lord/ master	A	6
domus, -ūs (f)	house	C	20
dormiō, dormire, dormiī/dormivī, dormitum	to sleep	C	12
dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātum	to give	A	27
dōnum, -ī	gift	A	8
dubitō, dubitare, dubitāvī, dubitātum	to doubt	A	11
dubius, -a, -um	doubtful	A	11
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum	to lead	B	27
dulcis, dulce	sweet	C	3
duo, duae, duo	two	B	14
dūrus, -a, -um	hard, harsh	A	27
dux, ducis (m)	leader, ruler, commander	B	30
eā	by that way	C	30
eam	her (accusative case)	B	6
ē or ex (+abl.)	out of, from	A	29
edō, edere/esse, ēdī, ēsum	to eat	C	17
emō, emere, ēmī, emptum	to buy	C	25
eō	thither (to there)	C	30
eō, ire, ivī, itum	to go	A	27
epistula, -ae	letter	A	20
eques, equitis (m)	horseman, knight, equestrian	B	25
equitātus, -ūs (m)	cavalry, body of horsemen	C	20
equus, -ī	horse	A	15
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptum	to snatch away	C	15
errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum	to wander	A	3
eum	him (accusative case)	B	6
ēventus, -ūs	event, fortune, accident;, result	C	22
exemplum, -ī	example	A	8
exeō, exīre, exivī, exitum	to go out	A	30
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum	to train	A	19
exercitus, -ūs (m)	army, infantry	C	20
exitus, -ūs	exit, departure; end, conclusion	C	20
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus	to drive out	C	18

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

explōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātum	to explore	A	27
exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum	to expect	B	1
extra (+ acc.)	outside of	A	24
extrēmus, -a, -um	outermost	B	1
etiam	also	C	2
fābula, -ae	story	A	1
facilis, facile	easy	C	3
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum	to make, do	C	15
factum, -ī	act, deed	C	9
falsus, -a, -um	false	A	11
fāma, -ae	fame, glory, report	A	20
familia, -ae	family	A	20
famula, -ae	servant (female)	A	4
famulus, -ī	servant (male)	A	6
fātum, -ī	fate	A	9
fēlix, fēlicis	happy, lucky, fruitful	C	5
fēmina, -ae	woman	A	4
fenestra, -ae	window	A	3
ferrum, -ī	iron	A	17
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum	to carry, bring	B	12
ferōx, ferōcis	fierce, warlike, wild	C	5
ferus, -ī	wild animal	A	15
fessus, -a, -um	tired	C	1
festinō, festināre, festināvī, festinātum	to hurry, rush, accelerate	C	1
fidēs, -eī	faith, trust, pledge	C	22
filia, -ae	daughter	A	4
filius, -ī	son	A	6
fīniō, fīnīre, fīniī/fīnīvī, fīnītum	to limit, restrain, end, finish	C	14
fīnis, finis (m, i)	limit, boundary	B	27
flamma, -ae	flame	B	6
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum	to blow, breathe	A	16
flōs, flōris (m)	flower	C	13
flūmen, flūminis (n)	river	B	29
fluvius, -ī	river	A	15
foedus, foederis (n)	alliance, league	C	17

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

folium, -ī	leaf	A	17
fōrma, -ae	shape, beauty	B	6
fortis, forte	strong, brave	C	3
fortiter	bravely	C	30
fortūna, -ae	fortune	C	8
forum, -ī	public square	A	9
fossa, -ae	ditch	A	2
frangō, frangere, frēgī, fractum	to break	C	26
frāter, frātris (m)	brother	B	20
frūmentum, -ī	grain	A	9
fuga, -ae	flight, escape	C	24
gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum	rejoice	A	19
gaudium, -ī	joy, delight	A	9
gēns, gentis (f, i)	clan, tribe	B	20
genū, -ūs (neuter)	knee	C	21
germāna, -ae	sister	A	4
germānus, -ī	brother	A	6
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum	to carry, wear (bellum gerere – to wage war)	C	17
gladius, -ī	sword	B	9
glōria, -ae	glory	A	3
grātia, -ae	thanks	B	6
grātus, -a, -um	grateful	A	22
gravis, grave	heavy, serious	C	3
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum	to have or hold	A	14
hāc	by this way	C	29
hasta, -ae	spear	C	7
habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum	to live	A	7
herī	yesterday	C	10
hic, haec, hoc	this	C	26
hīc	here	C	29
hiems, hiemis (f)	winter, stormy weather	C	12
hilaris, hilare	cheerful	C	18
hinc	hence (from here)	C	29
hodiē	today	C	10

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

homō, hominis (m)	man, human being	B	27
hōra, -ae	hour	B	6
horrendus, -ī	horrendous	A	22
hortus, -ī	garden	A	7
hostis, hostis (c, i)	stranger, foreigner, enemy (of one's country)	B	25
hūc	hither (to here)	C	29
humus, -ī	ground	A	19
ibi	there	C	30
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī (<i>jaceō, jacēre, jacuī</i>)	lie down	A	19
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum (<i>jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactum</i>)	to throw	C	15
iam	now, already	C	10
iānua, -ae (<i>jānua, -ae</i>)	door	B	6
id	it (nominative or accusative case)	B	6
ignārus, -a, -um	ignorant, unaware; unknown	C	25
ignavus, -a, -um	cowardly	A	22
ignis, ignis (m, i)	fire	B	27
ignōtus	unknown	A	12
illāc (illā)	by that way	C	29
ille	that	C	27
illic	there	C	29
illinc	thence (from there)	C	29
illūc	thither (to there)	C	29
imāgō, imāginis (f)	image	B	28
immortālis, immortāle	immortal	C	4
impedimentum, -ī	hindrance, baggage	C	9
imperātor, imperātōris (m)	general, commander, emperor	C	13
imperātum, -ī	command	C	9
imperium, -ī (n)	command, order, power	B	30
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum	to order or command	B	4
impetus, -ūs	attack; impetuosity, vehe- mence	C	21
impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositum	to put in, on	C	27

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

in (+abl.)	in	A	29
in (+acc.)	into	A	29
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum	to begin, start	C	15
incola, -ae (m)	settler	A	14
incolumis, incolume	unharmed, safe	C	4
inde	thence (to there)	C	30
infēlix, infēlicis	unhappy, unlucky, unfruitful	C	4
infrā (acc.)	below	A	24
ingēns, ingentis	huge	C	5
inimīcus, -ī	enemy (personal)	A	19
iniūria, -ae (<i>injūria, -ae</i>)	injury, injustice	B	3
īnopia, -ae	want, lack	C	8
insula, -ae	island	A	2
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum	to distinguish, understand	C	25
inter (+acc.)	between	A	24
interim	meanwhile	C	10
interrogō, interrogāre, interrogāvī, interrogātum	to ask or question	B	4
intrā (acc.)	within	A	24
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum	to come upon, find, (meet with is a more obscure meaning)	C	18
intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātum	enter	A	1
īra, -ae	anger	A	2
īrātus, -a, -um	angry	A	7
istā	by that way	C	29
iste	that (by you)	C	27
istīc	there (by you)	C	27
istīnc	thence (from there by you)	C	27
istūc	thither (to there by you)	C	27
iter, itineris (n)	journey, road	B	30
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum (<i>jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussum</i>)	order	A	9
iūdex, iūdicis (m) (<i>jūdex, jūdicis [m]</i>)	judge	B	24
iūdicium, -ī (<i>jūdicium, -ī</i>)	trial, legal investigation	B	4

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātum (jūrō, jūrāre, jūrāvī, jūrātum)	to take an oath	B	24
iūstus, -a, -um (iustus, -a, -um)	just	B	2
iuvenis, iuvenis (c, i) (juvenis, juvenis [c, i])	young person (age 20-40)	B	20
iuvō, iuvāre, iuvī, iūtum (juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum)	to help	B	8
iuxtā (+acc.) (juxta +acc.)	near	A	24
labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum	to work	A	1
labor, labōris (m)	labor, work	B	23
lacus, -ūs	lake	C	21
lacrima, -ae	tear	B	6
laetus, -a, -um	happy	A	12
latrō, latrōnis (m)	robber, mercenary	B	25
latus, lateris	side	B	29
laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum	to praise	B	8
lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum	to wash	B	8
lēgātus, -ī	deputy, lieutenant	B	7
legiō, legiōnis (f)	legion (division of the Roman army numbering between 4,200 -6,000 men)	C	13
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum	to collect; choose; read	C	2
levis, leve	light, fickle	C	3
lēx, lēgis	law	B	24
liber, libera, liberum	free	C	1
liber, librī	book	C	2
liberō, -āre, liberāvī, liberātum	to set free	C	24
lingua, -ae	tongue, language	B	6
littera, -ae	letter	B	7
lītus, lītōris (n)	shore, beach	B	29
locus, -ī	place	A	19
longus, -a, -um	long	A	21
lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī	to shine, be bright	C	7
lūdus, -ī	school, play	A	7
lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxī, luctum	to grieve	A	21
lūna, -ae	moon	B	7
lupus, -ī	wolf	A	7

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

lūx, lūcis (f)	light	B	23
luxuria, -ae	luxury, extravagance	B	7
magister, magistrī	teacher, master, captain (male)	A	6
magistra, -ae	teacher, master, captain (female)	A	4
magistrātus, -ūs	office, official	C	21
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis (f)	greatness	B	28
magnus, -a, -um	large	A	11
male	badly	C	10
maleficium, -ī	evil deed	C	9
malus, -a, -um	bad	A	12
mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum	entrust	A	8
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum	to remain	A	21
manus, -ūs (f)	hand, band, troop	C	20
mare, maris (n, i)	sea	B	30
merīdiēs, -eī (m)	mídday, noon	C	22
marīta, -ae	wife	B	8
marītō, marītāre, marītāvī, marītātum	to marry	B	8
marītus, -a, -um	married	B	8
marītus, -ī	husband	B	8
māter, mātris (f)	mother	B	20
medius, -ī	middle	B	3
memoria, -ae	memory	B	7
mēns, mentis (f)	mind, understanding, reason	B	28
mēnsa, -ae	table	A	2
mēta, -ae	turning point, goal	A	2
metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum	to fear, be afraid, be afraid of	C	27
metus, -ūs	fear	C	21
meus, mea, meum	my	C	27
mīles, mīlitis (c)	soldier	B	25
mīlitāris, mīlitāre	military (of soldiers)	C	4
mīlitō, mīlitāre	campaign, serve as a soldier	C	7
mille	thousand	B	16
minimus, -a, -um	smallest	A	27
mīrus, -a, -um	strange, wonderful	A	22

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

miser, misera, miserum	miserable	A	12
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	to send	C	25
modus, -ī	measure, mode	B	3
moenia, moenium (n. pl.)	walls or fortifications (of a city)	C	17
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum	to warn	A	21
mōns, montis (m)	mountain	B	23
monumentum, -ī	monument	A	17
mors, mortis (f)	death	B	25
mortālis, mortāle	mortal	C	4
mōs, mōris (m)	custom, habit; (in plural form) morals, character	C	18
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum	to move	B	9
mortuus, -a, -um	dead	B	1
mūniō, mūnīre, munīi/mūnīvī, mūnītum	to fortify, protect	C	14
multitūdō, multitūdinis (f)	large number, multitude	B	28
multus, multa, multum	many	C	26
mūrus, -ī	wall	A	15
mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum	to change	A	11
nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātum	to tell	A	1
nātūra, -ae	nature, birth	B	3
nauta, -ae (m)	sailor	A	14
nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātum	to sail	A	16
nāvis, nāvis (f, i)	ship	B	20
necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum	to kill	A	8
negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum	to deny	B	22
nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescīvī, nescītum	to not know	C	14
negōtium, -ī (n)	business, occupation	B	30
nōbilis, nōbile	well-known, noble	C	3
nōmen, nōminis (n)	a name	B	29
nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōminātum	to name, mention, call by name	B	4
nōn	not	C	2
nōnus, -a, -um	ninth	B	15
noster, nostra, nostrum	our	C	27
nōtus, -a, -um	known	A	12

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

novem	nine	B	14
novus, -a, -um	new	A	12
nox, noctis (f, i)	night	B	23
nūbēs, nūbis (f)	cloud	C	18
nūdus, -a, -um	bare	A	27
nullus, -a, -um	none	B	2
numerus, -ī	number, measure	B	3
nunc	now	C	30
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum	to announce	B	8
nūntius, -ī	messenger	B	8
ob (+ acc.)	in front of	A	25
obses, obsidis (c)	hostage	C	13
occāsus, -ūs	falling, setting	C	21
occupō, -āre, occupāvī, occupātum	to seize, occupy	C	24
octāvus, -a, -um	eighth	B	15
octō	eight	B	14
oculus, -ī	eye	B	7
officium, -ī	duty, respect	B	4
omnis, omne	all, whole, every	C	3
opera, -ae	effort, services	B	7
oppidum, -ī	town	A	5
oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum	to attack	A	8
optō, optāre, optāvī, optātum	to choose	A	27
opus, operis (n)	a work, a labor	B	30
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis (f)	speech, message	B	25
orbis, orbis (f)	circle, round thing	B	28
ornō, ornāre, ornāvī, ornātum	to equip	B	1
orō, orāre, orāvī, orātum	to pray	B	1
ōs, ōris (n)	mouth, face	B	29
pābulum, -ī	food for animals	A	17
pāgina, -ae	page	A	2
parātus, -a, -um	ready	A	21
parēns, parentis (c, i)	parent	B	20
parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum	to prepare	A	3

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

pars, partis (f, i)	part, portion	B	28
parvus, -a, -um	small	A	11
passus, -ūs (m)	step, stride, pace	C	20
pāter, pātris (m)	father	B	20
patria, -ae	native land	A	2
pauper, pauperis	poor	C	5
pāx, pācis (f)	peace, calm, quiet	C	13
peccō, peccāre, peccāvi, peccātum	to sin, make a mistake	B	24
pecūnia, -ae	money	B	16
per (+ acc.)	through	A	25
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum	to bring to an end, complete	C	15
periculum, -ī	danger	A	9
pēs, pedis (m)	foot	B	28
pessimus, -a, -um	worst	A	27
piscis, piscis (m, i)	fish	B	28
placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum + dative object	to please	C	7
plānitiēs, -ēī	flat surface, level ground, plain	C	22
plēnus, -a, -um	full	A	28
poena, -ae	penalty, punishment	B	16
poeta, -ae (m)	poet	A	14
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum	to put, place	B	29
populus, -ī	people	B	8
porta, -ae	gate	A	1
portō, portāre, portāvi, portātum	to carry; bring	C	1
portus, -ūs	harbor	C	21
post (+ acc.)	after	A	25
postea	afterwards	C	10
posterus, -a, -um	next	B	1
postrēmus, -a, -um	last	B	1
potēns, potentis	capable; powerful	C	5
potestās, potestātis (f)	power	B	24
prae (+ abl.)	in front of	A	29
praemium, -ī	reward	A	9
praesēns, praesentis	present	C	5

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

praesidium, -ī	garrison, protection	C	9
praeter (+ acc.)	past	A	25
prīmus, -a, -um	first	B	15
prīnceps, prīncipis (c)	leader, first one, prince	B	19
prīncipātus, -ūs	first place; post of commander in chief; principate; origin, beginning	C	22
prō (+ abl.)	before, on behalf of	A	29
probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum	to approve	B	1
prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum	to go ahead, proceed	C	27
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum	to hold back, prohibit	C	8
proelium, -ī	battle	B	9
prope (+ acc.)	near	A	25
propinquus, -a, -um	near	C	25
proprius, -a, -um	own, one's own	C	25
propter (+ acc.)	on account of	A	25
provincia, -ae	province	C	8
proximus	nearest	A	28
prūdēns, prūdētis	sensible, prudent	C	5
pūblicus, -a, -um	public	C	25
puella, -ae	girl	A	4
puer, puerī	boy	A	6
puerilis, puerile	boyish, childish (of boys)	C	4
pugna, -ae	fight	B	9
pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum	to fight	A	8
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful	B	2
pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīi/pūnīvī, pūnītum	to punish, avenge	C	14
pūrus, -a, -um	pure	A	28
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum	to think	B	1
quā	by that way, by what way?	C	30
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum	to seek, search for	C	26
quam	as much as, how much?	C	29
quandō	when? (question)	C	30
quartus, -a, -um	fourth	B	15
quattuor	four	B	14
quīnque	five	B	14

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

quīntus, -a, -um	fifth	B	15
quō	whither, whither? (to where)	C	30
quotiēns	as often as, how often?	C	29
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum	to seize and carry off, snatch	C	15
ratio, ratiōnis (f)	reckoning, account, calculation	B	28
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum	to keep back, keep in reserve, take back; (mil) retake, reoccupy	C	15
rēctus, -a, -um	straight	A	28
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum	to give back, return, restore	C	26
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum	to bring back, report	C	7
rēgīna, -ae	queen	A	2
regnum, -ī (n)	power, rule, realm	B	30
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum	to rule, guide, direct	C	27
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum	to leave behind, abandon	C	25
reliquus, -a, -um	remaining, left	A	28
rēmus, -ī	oar	B	9
reperiō, reperire, repperī, repertum	to find, discover; learn	C	14
rēs, -eī	thing, matter	C	22
resistō, resistere, resistitī	to stand still, resist (with dat.) to be opposed to, resist, to reply to	C	27
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, responsum	to respond	B	19
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum	to hold back	C	7
revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum	to turn back, return	C	27
rēx, rēgis (m)	king	B	19
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum	to laugh, smile	B	19
rīpa, -ae	river bank	B	17
rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum	to ask	A	27
rosa, -ae	rose	B	16
sacculus, -ī	little bag	B	9
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred, holy	C	25
saepe	often	C	10
salūs, salūtis (f)	health	B	25
salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī, salūtātum	to greet, wish well; welcome	C	1

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

salveō, salvēre	to be well	B	16
sanguis, sanguinis (m)	blood	B	25
sapientia, -ae	wisdom	B	17
saxum, -ī	rock	A	17
scelus, sceleris (n)	crime	B	30
schola, -ae	school, group of followers	C	2
scholam habeo	I give a class or lecture	C	2
sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītum	to know	C	12
scribo, scribere, scripsi, scriptum	to write, engrave	B	27
scūtum, -ī	shield	C	7
secundum (+ acc.)	along	A	25
secundus, -a, -um	second	B	15
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum	to sit	B	19
semper	always	C	10
senātus, -ūs (m)	body of elders, senate	C	20
senex, senis (m)	old man	B	20
senior, seniōris	older	C	18
sententia, -ae	sentence	B	16
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum	to perceive with the senses, feel, observe	C	14
septem	seven	B	14
septimus, -a, -um	seventh	B	15
sepulchrum, -ī	tomb	A	20
serēnus, -a, -um	calm, bright, clear	A	12
sermō, sermōnis (m)	talk, conversation, discourse	B	25
serva, -ae	slave (female)	A	4
serviō, servīre, serviī/servīvī, servītum (+ dat.)	to be a slave or servant, to be obedient	C	12
servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum	to save	B	16
servus, -ī	slave (male)	A	6
sex	six	B	14
sextus, -a, -um	sixth	B	15
signum, -ī	sign	A	17
silentium, -ī	silence	A	17
silva, -ae	forest	A	1
sine (+ abl.)	without	A	29

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum	left	C	7
socius, -ī	ally, associate	A	7
sōl, sōlis (m)	the sun	B	23
somnus, -ī	sleep	B	17
sonus, -ī	sound, noise	C	17
sordidus, -a, -um	dirty	A	22
soror, sorōris (f)	sister	B	19
spatium, -ī	space	C	9
speciēs, -ēī	view, sight; outward appearance	C	22
spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātum	to look for	A	3
spēs, -eī	hope, expectation	C	22
statua, statuae	statue	C	17
stella, -ae	star	B	3
stō, stāre, stetī, stātum	to stand	A	3
studeō, studēre, studuī (+ dat.)	to be eager for; study	C	2
stadium, -ī	zeal, study	B	4
sub (+ abl.)	under	A	29
sub (+ acc.)	up to	A	29
sum, esse, fui, futūrum	to be	A	3
summa, -ae	sum, total	C	8
super (+ acc.)	over	A	25
superō, -āre, superāvī, superātum	to overcome, surpass, defeat	C	24
suprā (+ acc.)	over	A	25
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum	to rise, get up	B	29
suus, sua, suum	his, her, their own	C	27
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum	to be silent	C	18
tacitus, -a, -um	silent	A	22
tam	so much	C	29
tardō, tardāre, tardāvī, tardātum	to delay	A	7
tardus, -a, -um	late	C	25
tectum, -ī	roof, building, dwelling	A	20
tēlum, -ī	weapon	C	9
temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum	to try, test	C	18
templum, -ī	section, temple	A	20

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum	to hold	A	14
terra, -ae	earth	A	1
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum	to terrify, frighten	B	19
tertius, -a, -um	third	B	15
timeō, timēre, timuī	to fear, be afraid of	B	19
timor, timōris (m)	fear	B	22
toga, -ae	toga (clothing)	C	1
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum	to raise, lift	C	17
totiēns	so often	C	29
tōtus, -a, -um	whole, entire	A	28
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum	to hand over, give up, surrender	C	25
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum	to pull, drag	C	26
trāns (+ acc.)	across	A	25
trēs, tria	three	B	14
tuba, -ae	trumpet	C	8
tum	then, next	C	30
tumulus, -ī	hill, mound	B	9
tunc	then, next	C	30
tuus, tua, tuum	your (singular)	C	27
ubī	where, where?	C	30
ullus, -a, -um	any	A	28
ultimus, -a, -um	farthest	A	28
ultra (+ acc.)	beyond	A	25
unda, -ae	wave	A	3
unde	whence, whence? (to where)	C	30
ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one	B	14
urbs, urbis (f, i)	walled town, city	B	20
ūsus, -ūs	use; experience; advantage	C	21
uxor, uxōris (f)	wife	B	23
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum	to be strong, be well	B	16
vallum, -ī	wall	A	17
varius, -a, -um	various, different	A	28
vēlum, -ī	sail	A	17
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum	to come	C	12

ALPHABETICAL GLOSSARY

ventus, -ī	wind	A	15
verbum, -ī	word	A	17
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	to turn, turn away	C	7
vērus, -a, -um	true	A	11
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (plural)	C	27
vestigium, -ī (n)	footprint, trace, track	B	30
vestis, vestis (f, i)	clothing, garment	B	23
vetus, veteris	old, aged; long-standing	C	5
via, -ae	road, way	A	2
victor, victōris (m)	victor	B	23
victōria, -ae	victory	C	24
videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum	to see	A	14
vigilō, vigilāre, vigilāvī, vigilātum	to watch, keep awake	A	7
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum	to conquer	B	29
vīnum, -ī	wine	B	4
vir, virī	man	A	6
virgō, virginis (f)	maiden, virgin, girl	C	13
virilis, virile	manly (of a man)	C	4
virtūs, virtūtis (f)	virtue, manliness, courage	C	13
vīta, -ae	life	B	16
vitium, -ī	fault	B	4
vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum	to avoid	A	16
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum	to live	B	29
vīvus, -a, -um	living	B	1
vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum	to call	A	16
volō, volāre, volāvī, volātum	to fly	B	24
vōx, vōcis (f)	voice	B	23
vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum	to wound	C	8
vulnus, vulneris (n)	wound	B	9

April



Notes ch 4:

2. termination

3rd termination

i. Masculine

Feminine

Neuter

Latin test review

★ 3 sentences in latin

↳ translate + parse out

(m) disciplin(a)s

Disciplin(e) student

Ch 7/



Notes ^{past}

present

future

perfect

imperfect



Notes



MA

Q



REFERENCE CHARTS: VERB CONJUGATIONS

Person	Tense	Number	Regular Verb Conjugations					Irregular Verb Conjugations			
			1 st Conjugation (Amō)	2 nd Conjugation (Videō)	3 rd Conjugation (Dūco)	4 th Conjugation (Audiō)	3 rd Conjugation "īo" (Capiō)	Sum, esse	Possum, posse	Eō, ire	Ferō, ferre
Principal Parts			amō, amāre, amāvi, amātum	videō, vidēre, vidi, visum	dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum	audiō, audire, audivi, auditum	capiō, capere, cēpi, captum	sum, esse, fui, futūrum	possum, posse, potui	eō, ire, ii, itum	ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum
1 st Person	Present	Singular	amō	videō	dūcō	audiō	capiō	sum	possum	eō	ferō
2 nd Person			amās	vidēs	dūcis	audis	capis	es	potes	is	fers
3 rd Person			amat	videt	dūcit	audit	capit	est	potest	it	fert
1 st Person		Plural	amāmus	vidēmus	dūcimus	audimus	capimus	sumus	possumus	īmus	ferimus
2 nd Person			amātis	vidētis	dūcitis	auditis	capitis	estis	potestis	ītis	fertis
3 rd Person			amant	vident	dūcunt	audiunt	capiunt	sunt	possunt	eunt	ferunt
1 st Person	Imperfect	Singular	amābam	vidēbam	dūcēbam	audiēbam	capiēbam	eram	poteram	ībam	ferēbam
2 nd Person			amābās	vidēbās	dūcēbās	audiēbās	capiēbās	erās	poterās	ībās	ferēbas
3 rd Person			amābat	vidēbat	dūcēbat	audiēbat	capiēbat	erat	poterat	ībat	ferēbat
1 st Person		Plural	amābāmus	vidēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus	erāmus	poterāmus	ībāmus	ferēbāmus
2 nd Person			amābātis	vidēbātis	dūcēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis	erātis	poterātis	ībātis	ferēbātis
3 rd Person			amābant	vidēbant	dūcēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant	erant	poterant	ībant	ferēbant
1 st Person	Future	Singular	amābō	vidēbō	dūcam	audiam	capiam	erō	poterō	ībō	feram
2 nd Person			amābis	vidēbis	dūcēs	audiēs	capiēs	eris	poteris	ībis	ferēs
3 rd Person			amābit	vidēbit	dūcet	audiet	capiet	erit	poterit	ībit	feret
1 st Person		Plural	amābimus	vidēbimus	dūcēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus	erimus	poterimus	ībimus	ferēmus
2 nd Person			amābitis	vidēbitis	dūcētis	audiētis	capiētis	eritis	poteritis	ībitis	ferētis
3 rd Person			amābunt	vidēbunt	dūcent	audient	capient	erunt	poterunt	ībunt	ferent
1 st Person	Perfect	Singular	amāvī	vidī	dūxī	audivī	cēpī	fui	potui	ii	tuli
2 nd Person			amāvistī	vidistī	dūxistī	audivistī	cēpistī	fuistī	potuistī	istī	tulistī
3 rd Person			amāvit	vidit	dūxit	audivit	cēpit	fuit	potuit	iit	tulit
1 st Person		Plural	amāvimus	vidimus	dūximus	audivimus	cēpimus	fuius	potuimus	iimus	tulimus
2 nd Person			amāvistis	vidistis	dūxistis	audivistis	cēpistis	fuistis	potuistis	istis	tulistis
3 rd Person			amāvērunt	vidērunt	dūxērunt	audivērunt	cēpērunt	fuērunt	potuērunt	iērunt	tulērunt
1 st Person	Pluperfect	Singular	amāveram	videram	dūxeram	audiveram	cēperam	fueram	potueram	ieram	tuleram
2 nd Person			amāverās	viderās	dūxeras	audiverās	cēperās	fuerās	potuerās	ierās	tulerās
3 rd Person			amāverat	viderat	dūxerat	audiverat	cēperat	fuerat	potuerat	ierat	tulerat
1 st Person		Plural	amāverāmus	viderāmus	dūxerāmus	audiverāmus	cēperāmus	fuerāmus	potuerāmus	ierāmus	tulerāmus
2 nd Person			amāverātis	viderātis	dūxerātis	audiverātis	cēperātis	fuerātis	potuerātis	ierātis	tulerātis
3 rd Person			amāverant	viderant	dūxerant	audiverant	cēperant	fuerant	potuerant	ierant	tulerant
1 st Person	Future Perfect	Singular	amāverō	viderō	dūxerō	audiverō	cēperō	fuerō	potuerō	ierō	tulerō
2 nd Person			amāveris	videris	dūxeris	audiveris	cēperis	fueris	potueris	ieris	tuleris
3 rd Person			amāverit	viderit	dūxerit	audiverit	cēperit	fuerit	potuerit	ierit	tulerit
1 st Person		Plural	amāverimus	viderimus	dūxerimus	audiverimus	cēperimus	fuerimus	potuerimus	ierimus	tulerimus
2 nd Person			amāveritis	videritis	dūxeritis	audiveritis	cēperitis	fueritis	potueritis	ieritis	tuleritis
3 rd Person			amāverint	viderint	dūxerint	audiverint	cēperint	fuerint	potuerint	ierint	tulerint
Infinitive			amāre	vidēre	dūcere	audire	capere	esse	posse	ire	ferre
Singular Imperative			amā	vidē	dūc	audi	cape	es, estō		i	fer
Plural Imperative			amāte	vidēte	dūcite	audite	capite	este		ite	ferite

REFERENCE CHARTS: NOUN, ADJECTIVE AND PRONOUN DECLENSIONS

Noun/ Adjective Endings

Case	Number	1 st declension	2 nd Declension		3 rd Declension				4 th Declension		5 th Declension
			2 nd Declension masculine	2 nd Declension neuter	3 rd Declension (masculine and feminine)	3 rd Declension (neuter)	3 rd Declension (I-stem)	3 rd Declension (neuter I-stem)	4 th Declension	4 th Declension Neuter	5 th Declension
Nominative	Singular	-a	-us	-um	-x	-x	-x	-x	-us	-ū	-ēs
Genitive		-ae	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-is	-is	-ūs	-ūs	-eī/eī
Dative		-ae	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-uī	-ū	-eī/eī
Accusative		-am	-um	-um	-em	-x	-em	-x	-um	-ū	-em
Ablative		-ā	-ō	-ō	-e	-e	-e	-ī	-ū	-ū	-ē
Nominative	Plural	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Genitive		-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um	-um	-ium	-ium	-uum	-uum	-ērum
Dative		-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus
Accusative		-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Ablative		-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus

Pronoun Declensions

Case	Number	1 st and 2 nd Person Personal Pronouns: "ego, nōs/ tū, vōs"		3 rd Person Personal Pronoun: "is, ea, id..."			Demonstrative Pronoun: "hic, haec, hoc..." (this, near me)			Demonstrative Pronoun: "ille, illa, illud..." (that over there)		
		1 st Person ("I, we")	2 nd Person ("you")	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
Nominative	Singular	ego	tū	is	ea	id	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
Genitive		meī	tuī	eius	eius	eius	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
Dative		mihi	tibi	eī	eī	eī	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
Accusative		mē	tē	eum	eam	id	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Ablative		mē	tē	eō	eā	eō	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
Nominative	Plural	nōs	vōs	eī	eāe	ea	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Genitive		nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dative		nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs	eīs	eīs	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis
Accusative		nōs	vōs	eōs	eās	ea	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Ablative		nōbīs	vōbīs	eīs	eīs	eīs	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis

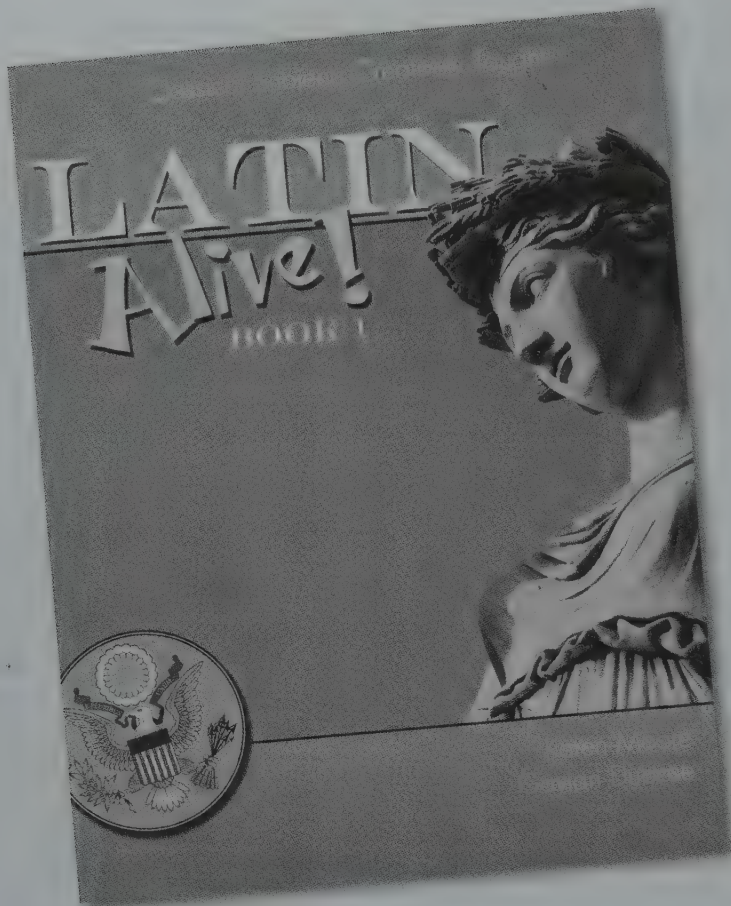
3rd Declension Adjective Declensions

Case	Number	3-termination ("celer...")			2-termination ("brevis...")			1-termination ("audāx...")		
		masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter
Nominative	Singular	celer	celeris	celere	brevis		breve	audāx		
Genitive		celeris			brevis			audācis		
Dative		celerī			brevis			audācī		
Accusative		celerem		celere	brevem		breve	audācem		audāx
Ablative		celerī			brevis			audācī		
Nominative	Plural	celerēs		celerīa	brevēs		brevia	audācēs		audācīa
Genitive		celerium			brevium			audācium		
Dative		celeribus			brevibus			audācibus		
Accusative		celerēs		celerīa	brevēs		brevia	audācēs		audācīa
Ablative		celeribus			brevibus			audācibus		

USE ADJECTIVE

Number Declensions

Case	Singular			Plural				
	ūnus (one)			Duo (two)			Trēs (three)	
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine	neuter	feminine	neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Genitive	ūnūs	ūnūs	ūnūs	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus



Latin Comes Alive!

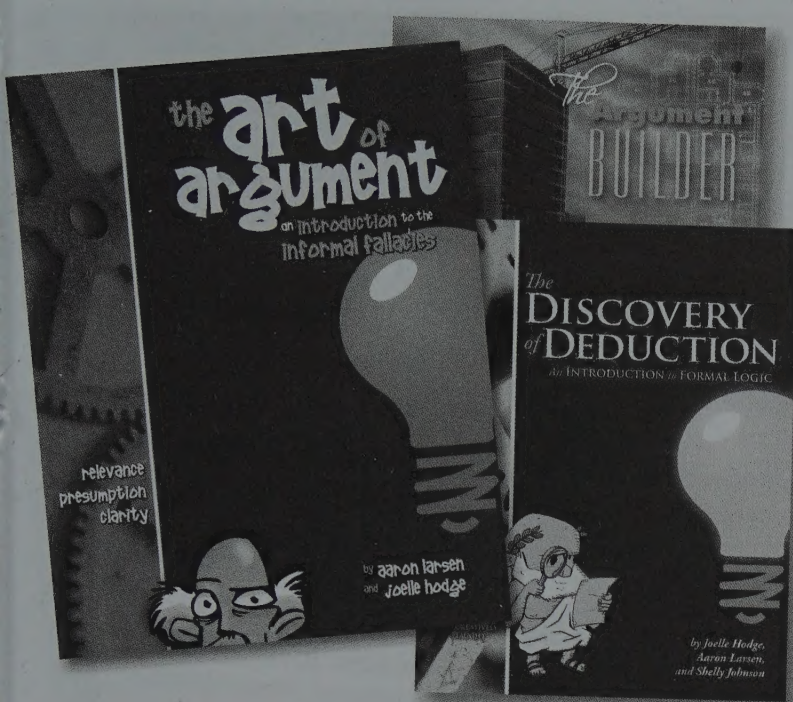
Latin is an elegant and ancient language that has been studied for many generations. It is also quite alive in our culture and in the languages we speak today. You will be surprised at what you learn in each new chapter of *Latin Alive! Book One*. As the first text in a three-year series, it is a rigorous and thorough introduction to this great language, and is designed to engage the upper school (middle and high school) student. Brimming with relevant facts and stories, this text offers something for everyone.

- 36 weekly chapters, including 29 new content chapters and 7 review “reading” chapters
- Pronunciation guides
- Weekly introduction of vocabulary
- Thorough grammatical explanations, including all five noun declensions and cases, all verb conjugations, irregular verbs, various pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs
- United States state seals and their Latin mottos
- Extensive study of the Latin derivatives of English words
- Substantial Latin readings and translation exercises
- Lessons and stories of Roman culture, myths, and history
- Exercises and questions to prepare students for the National Latin Exam and the Advanced Placement Exam
- Includes historical contributions from Christopher Schlect, historian and academic dean at New Saint Andrews College, Moscow, ID.
- Teacher’s Edition, including answer keys, teacher’s helps, and additional activities available separately

How does this text compare with *Latin for Children*?

This first text in the *Latin Alive!* series serves as both an introduction for the middle school and high school student who has not previously studied Latin, and also as a “bridge text” into more advanced study for students who have studied Latin in grammar school. If your student has gone through all of the *Latin for Children Primers*, you will find this first year of *Latin Alive!* to be one of accelerated review, with greater explanation of grammar and increased reading and translation.

Get *free* samples, videos, and more on our website: www.ClassicalAcademicPress.com



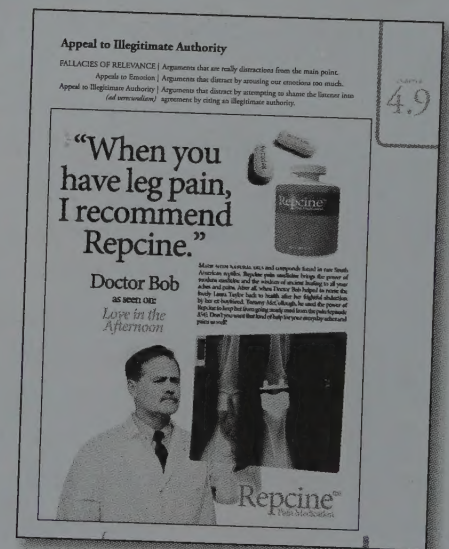
“My chief objection to a quarrel,” Chesterton wrote, “is that it ends a good argument.”

Logic is a fascinating subject for students in middle school or high school. As a fundamental part of the trivium, logic study will impart to students the skills needed to craft accurate statements and

identify the flawed arguments found so frequently in editorials, commercials, newspapers, journals and every other media. We regard the mastery of logic as a "paradigm" subject by which we evaluate, assess and learn other subjects—it is a sharp knife with which we can carve and shape all manner of wood. Mastery of logic is a requisite skill for mastering other subjects.

There are several branches of logic, and our three levels of curriculum focus on teaching informal, and formal logic, as well as to supply students with the tools to create their own logical arguments. The three texts are modular, and while we generally recommend that students begin with informal logic study in *The Art of Argument*, the following two texts, *Discovery of Deduction* and *The Argument Builder*, can be used in any order. Each of these logic courses recognize that students are living in the 21st century and couch the logical concepts in real-life, often humorous examples.

Get free samples, videos, and more on our website:
www.ClassicalAcademicPress.com



Join us on the back porch!

Get to know Classical Academic Press better, give us suggestions, post on our wall, sign up for give-aways and coupons, and participate in polls that affect the future of these books. We'd love to hear from you, so come on by our Facebook fan page.



Tired of boring, dull *flash cards*?

Prepare for a new experience with *Clash Cards* ...the flash cards that play like a card game!

They are designed to be helpful, easy-to-use flash cards, but that's just the beginning. *Clash Cards* is also a card game that makes reinforcing vocabulary words fun and exciting. Students test their knowledge as they play a challenging game of rivalry between the four seasons. As word skills and wild weather collide, who will emerge victorious?

Clash Cards features:

- 240 vocabulary words
- Full-color design
- 3 levels of play
- Customizable deck

Each card features:

- 2 vocabulary words
- Word classification
- Common derivative words
- Book and that match Acad



A fun free site to
practice your Latin!

Classical Subjects Creatively Practiced
Headventure Land
www.HeadventureLand.com

Latin for Children

Primer C

LATIN FOR CHILDREN: PRIMER C

L is engaging, incremental, creative and filled with clear explanations, illustrations, exercises, tests, and a sizable and useful reference section. The text comes with a plethora of mnemonic aids (songs, chants) that enable students to learn vocabulary (240 of the most frequently occurring words) and grammar with ease and delight. *Latin For Children: Primer C* is the third in a series of three (Primers A, B and C).

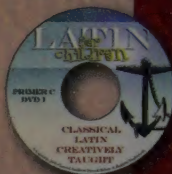
- Integrated with **Shurley Grammar**
- Integrated with **Veritas History Curriculum**
- Ecclesiastical or Classical Pronunciation
- Includes **Stories & Games** (with more available in companion **History Reader & Activity Book**)
- **240 vocabulary words**
- Integrated and **clear explanations of grammar** in every chapter



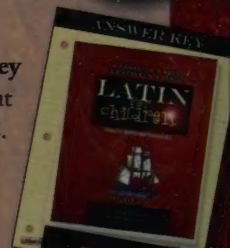
LATIN FOR CHILDREN

Support Materials

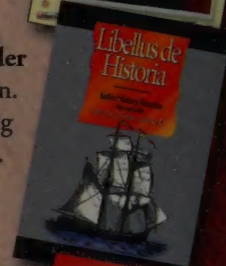
LFC C DVDs & Chant CD
Learn from the author, chapter by chapter. 5½ hours of Video + 80 minutes of Chant CD.
Samples online.



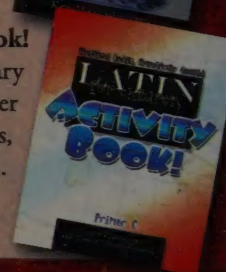
LFC C Answer Key
Check your work throughout LFC, Primer C.
Samples online.



LFC C History Reader
Practice reading Latin. Corresponds with the reading level of LFC, Primer C.
Samples online.



LFC C Activity Book!
Practice your Latin vocabulary and grammar with over 100 pages of games, puzzles & fun.
Samples online.



Classical Academic Press

Foreign Language: Latin
ISBN13: 9781600510120

\$24.95



9 781600 510120

52495